

# **FreeBSD Porter's Handbook**

**The FreeBSD Documentation Project**

# FreeBSD Porter's Handbook

by

Revision: [45423](#)

2014-08-08 by rene.

Copyright © 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014 The FreeBSD Documentation Project

Copyright

Redistribution and use in source (XML DocBook) and 'compiled' forms (XML, HTML, PDF, PostScript, RTF and so forth) with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code (XML DocBook) must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer as the first lines of this file unmodified.
2. Redistributions in compiled form (transformed to other DTDs, converted to PDF, PostScript, RTF and other formats) must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.



## Important

THIS DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED BY THE FREEBSD DOCUMENTATION PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FREEBSD DOCUMENTATION PROJECT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS DOCUMENTATION, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

FreeBSD is a registered trademark of the FreeBSD Foundation.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, Java, Java Virtual Machine, JDK, JRE, JSP, JVM, Netra, OpenJDK, Solaris, StarOffice, SunOS and VirtualBox are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this document, and the FreeBSD Project was aware of the trademark claim, the designations have been followed by the “™” or the “®” symbol.

# Table of Contents

1. Introduction .....	1
2. Making a New Port .....	3
3. Quick Porting .....	5
3.1. Writing the Makefile .....	5
3.2. Writing the Description Files .....	6
3.3. Creating the Checksum File .....	9
3.4. Testing the Port .....	9
3.5. Checking the Port with portlint .....	10
3.6. Submitting the New Port .....	10
4. Slow Porting .....	13
4.1. How Things Work .....	13
4.2. Getting the Original Sources .....	14
4.3. Modifying the Port .....	15
4.4. Patching .....	16
4.5. Configuring .....	18
4.6. Handling User Input .....	18
5. Configuring the Makefile .....	19
5.1. The Original Source .....	19
5.2. Naming .....	19
5.3. Categorization .....	26
5.4. The Distribution Files .....	34
5.5. MAINTAINER .....	48
5.6. COMMENT .....	50
5.7. PORTSCOUT .....	50
5.8. Dependencies .....	51
5.9. MASTERDIR .....	58
5.10. Man Pages .....	59
5.11. Info Files .....	59
5.12. Makefile Options .....	59
5.13. Specifying the Working Directory .....	71
5.14. Conflict Handling .....	72
5.15. Installing Files .....	73
6. Special Considerations .....	79
6.1. Staging .....	79
6.2. Bundled Libraries .....	80
6.3. Shared Libraries .....	81
6.4. Ports with Distribution Restrictions or Legal Concerns .....	82
6.5. Building Mechanisms .....	84
6.6. Using GNU Autotools .....	87
6.7. Using GNU gettext .....	89
6.8. Using Perl .....	91
6.9. Using X11 .....	93
6.10. Using GNOME .....	96
6.11. Using Qt .....	96

6.12. Using KDE .....	100
6.13. Using Java .....	101
6.14. Web Applications, Apache and PHP .....	106
6.15. Using Python .....	109
6.16. Using Tcl/Tk .....	110
6.17. Using Emacs .....	111
6.18. Using Ruby .....	111
6.19. Using SDL .....	112
6.20. Using wxWidgets .....	113
6.21. Using Lua .....	119
6.22. Using iconv .....	121
6.23. Using Xfce .....	123
6.24. Using Mozilla .....	123
6.25. Using Databases .....	124
6.26. Starting and Stopping Services (rc Scripts) .....	125
6.27. Adding Users and Groups .....	128
6.28. Ports That Rely on Kernel Sources .....	128
7. Advanced <b>pkg-plist</b> Practices .....	131
7.1. Changing <b>pkg-plist</b> Based on Make Variables .....	131
7.2. Empty Directories .....	132
7.3. Configuration Files .....	133
7.4. Dynamic Versus Static Package List .....	134
7.5. Automated Package List Creation .....	135
7.6. Expanding Package List with Keywords .....	135
8. The <b>pkg-*</b> Files .....	141
8.1. <b>pkg-message</b> .....	141
8.2. <b>pkg-install</b> .....	141
8.3. <b>pkg-deinstall</b> .....	142
8.4. Changing the Names of <b>pkg-*</b> Files .....	142
8.5. Making Use of <b>SUB_FILES</b> and <b>SUB_LIST</b> .....	142
9. Testing the Port .....	145
9.1. Running <b>make describe</b> .....	145
9.2. <b>Portlint</b> .....	145
9.3. Port Tools .....	145
9.4. <b>PREFIX</b> and <b>DESTDIR</b> .....	146
9.5. <b>Tinderbox</b> .....	147
9.6. <b>Poudriere</b> .....	147
10. Upgrading a Port .....	149
10.1. Using Subversion to Make Patches .....	151
10.2. The Files <b>UPDATING</b> and <b>MOVED</b> .....	152
11. Security .....	155
11.1. Why Security is So Important .....	155
11.2. Fixing Security Vulnerabilities .....	155
11.3. Keeping the Community Informed .....	156
12. Dos and Don'ts .....	163
12.1. Introduction .....	163

## Table of Contents

---

12.2. WRKDIR .....	163
12.3. WRKDIRPREFIX .....	163
12.4. Differentiating Operating Systems and OS Versions .....	163
12.5. Writing Something After <b>bsd.port.mk</b> .....	164
12.6. Use the <b>exec</b> Statement in Wrapper Scripts .....	165
12.7. Do Things Rationally .....	165
12.8. Respect Both CC and CXX .....	166
12.9. Respect CFLAGS .....	166
12.10. Threading Libraries .....	167
12.11. Feedback .....	167
12.12. <b>README.html</b> .....	167
12.13. Marking a Port as Architecture Neutral .....	168
12.14. Marking a Port Not Installable with <b>BROKEN</b> , <b>FORBIDDEN</b> , or <b>IGNORE</b> .....	168
12.15. Marking a Port for Removal with <b>DEPRECATED</b> or <b>EXPIRATION_DATE</b> ....	170
12.16. Avoid Use of the <b>.error</b> Construct .....	170
12.17. Usage of <b>sysctl</b> .....	171
12.18. Rerolling Distfiles .....	171
12.19. Avoiding Linuxisms .....	171
12.20. Miscellanea .....	172
13. A Sample <b>Makefile</b> .....	173
14. Keeping Up .....	175
14.1. FreshPorts .....	175
14.2. The Web Interface to the Source Repository .....	175
14.3. The FreeBSD Ports Mailing List .....	175
14.4. The FreeBSD Port Building Cluster .....	176
14.5. Portscout: the FreeBSD Ports Distfile Scanner .....	176
14.6. The FreeBSD Ports Monitoring System .....	176
15. Values of <b>USES</b> .....	179
16. <b>__FreeBSD_version</b> Values .....	197



# List of Tables

5.1. Popular Magic MASTER_SITES Macros .....	36
5.2. USE_GITHUB Description .....	37
5.3. The USE_* Variables .....	55
6.1. Variables for Ports That Use configure .....	85
6.2. Variables for Ports That Use cmake .....	86
6.3. Variables the Users can define for cmake builds .....	86
6.4. Variables for Ports That Use scons .....	87
6.5. Read-Only Variables for Ports That Use Perl .....	91
6.6. Variables for Ports That Use X .....	93
6.7. Variables Provided to Ports That Use Qt .....	96
6.8. Available Qt Library Components .....	97
6.9. Available Qt Tool Components .....	97
6.10. Available Qt Plugin Components .....	98
6.11. Variables for Ports That Use qmake .....	99
6.12. Available KDE 4 Components .....	100
6.13. Variables Which May be Set by Ports That Use Java .....	102
6.14. Variables Provided to Ports That Use Java .....	102
6.15. Constants Defined for Ports That Use Java .....	104
6.16. Variables for Ports That Use Apache .....	106
6.17. Useful Variables for Porting Apache Modules .....	106
6.18. Variables for Ports That Use PHP .....	107
6.19. Most Useful Variables for Ports That Use Python .....	109
6.20. The Most Useful Read-Only Variables for Ports That Use Tcl/Tk .....	110
6.21. Useful Variables for Ports That Use Ruby .....	111
6.22. Selected Read-Only Variables for Ports That Use Ruby .....	111
6.23. Variables to Select wxWidgets Versions .....	114
6.24. Available wxWidgets Versions .....	114
6.25. wxWidgets Version Specifications .....	114
6.26. Variables to Select Preferred wxWidgets Versions .....	115
6.27. Available wxWidgets Components .....	115
6.28. Available wxWidgets Dependency Types .....	115
6.29. Default wxWidgets Dependency Types .....	115
6.30. Variables to Select Unicode in wxWidgets Versions .....	116
6.31. Variables Defined for Ports That Use wxWidgets .....	118
6.32. Legal Values for WX_CONF_ARGS .....	119
6.33. Variables Defined for Ports That Use Lua .....	120
6.34. Variables for Ports That Use Mozilla .....	123
6.35. Variables for Ports Using Databases .....	124
10.1. Subversion Update File Prefixes .....	151
15.1. Values of USES .....	179
16.1. __FreeBSD_version Values .....	197





# List of Examples

5.1. Simple Use of USE_GITHUB .....	37
5.2. More Complete Use of USE_GITHUB .....	38
5.3. Simplified Use of MASTER_SITES:n with One File Per Site .....	41
5.4. Simplified Use of MASTER_SITES:n with More Than One File Per Site .....	42
5.5. Detailed Use of MASTER_SITES:n in MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR .....	43
5.6. Detailed Use of MASTER_SITES:n with Comma Operator, Multiple Files, Multiple Sites and Multiple Subdirectories .....	44
5.7. Detailed Use of MASTER_SITES:n with MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE .....	46
5.8. Simplified Use of MASTER_SITES:n with PATCH_SITES .....	46
5.9. Use of ALWAYS_KEEP_DISTFILES .....	48
5.10. Wrong Declaration of an Optional Dependency .....	57
5.11. Correct Declaration of an Optional Dependency .....	57
5.12. Simple Use of OPTIONS .....	62
5.13. Check for Unset Port OPTIONS .....	62
5.14. Practical Use of OPTIONS .....	62
5.15. Wrong Handling of an Option .....	64
5.16. Correct Handling of an Option .....	64
6.1. USES= cmake Example .....	87
6.2. Perl Dependency Example .....	92
6.3. USE_XORG Example .....	93
6.4. Using X11-Related Variables .....	94
6.5. Selecting Qt 4 Components .....	98
6.6. USES= qmake Example .....	99
6.7. USE_KDE4 Example .....	101
6.8. Example Makefile for PEAR Class .....	108
6.9. Selecting wxWidgets Components .....	116
6.10. Detecting Installed wxWidgets Versions and Components .....	117
6.11. Using wxWidgets Variables in Commands .....	118
6.12. Simple iconv Usage .....	121
6.13. iconv Usage with configure .....	122
6.14. Fixing Hardcoded -liconv .....	122
6.15. Checking for Native iconv Availability .....	122
7.1. Example of a @dirrmtryecho Keyword .....	138
7.2. Real Life Example, How the @sample Could be Implemented .....	139
12.1. How to Avoid Using .error .....	171
15.1. Typical Use .....	186



# Chapter 1. Introduction

The FreeBSD Ports Collection is the way almost everyone installs applications ("ports") on FreeBSD. Like everything else about FreeBSD, it is primarily a volunteer effort. It is important to keep this in mind when reading this document.

In FreeBSD, anyone may submit a new port, or volunteer to maintain an existing port if it is unmaintained—you do not need any special commit privileges to do so.



# Chapter 2. Making a New Port

So, you are interested in making your own port or upgrading an existing one? Great!

What follows are some guidelines for creating a new port for FreeBSD. If you want to upgrade an existing port, you should read this and then read [Chapter 10, Upgrading a Port](#).

When this document is not sufficiently detailed, you should refer to `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.port.mk`, which all port Makefiles include. Even if you do not hack Makefiles daily, it is well commented, and you will still gain much knowledge from it. Additionally, you may send specific questions to the [FreeBSD ports mailing list](#).



## Note

Only a fraction of the variables (*VAR*) that can be overridden are mentioned in this document. Most (if not all) are documented at the start of `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.port.mk`; the others probably ought to be. Note that this file uses a non-standard tab setting: Emacs and Vim should recognize the setting on loading the file. Both [vi\(1\)](#) and [ex\(1\)](#) can be set to use the correct value by typing `:set tabstop=4` once the file has been loaded.

Looking for something easy to start with? Take a look at the [list of requested ports](#) and see if you can work on one (or more).



# Chapter 3. Quick Porting

This section describes how to quickly create a new port. For applications where this quick method is not adequate, the full “Slow Porting” process is described in [Chapter 4, Slow Porting](#).

First, get the original tarball and put it into DISTDIR, which defaults to /usr/ports/distfiles.



## Note

The following steps assume that the software compiled out-of-the-box. In other words, absolutely no changes were required for the application to work on a FreeBSD system. If anything had to be changed, refer to [Chapter 4, Slow Porting](#).



## Note

It is recommended to set the DEVELOPER [make\(1\)](#) variable in /etc/make.conf before getting into porting.

```
# echo DEVELOPER=yes >> /etc/make.conf
```

This setting enables the “developer mode” that displays deprecation warnings and activates some further quality checks on calling make.

## 3.1. Writing the Makefile

The minimal Makefile would look something like this:

```
# $FreeBSD$

PORTNAME= oneko
PORTVERSION= 1.1b
CATEGORIES= games
MASTER_SITES= ftp://ftp.cs.columbia.edu/archives/X11R5/contrib/

MAINTAINER= youremail@example.com
COMMENT= Cat chasing a mouse all over the screen
```

```
.include <bsd.port.mk>
```



### Note

In some cases, the `Makefile` of an existing port may contain additional lines in the header, such as the name of the port and the date it was created. This additional information has been declared obsolete, and is being phased out.

Try to figure it out. Do not worry about the contents of the `$FreeBSD$` line, it will be filled in automatically by Subversion when the port is imported to our main ports tree. A more detailed example is shown in the [sample Makefile](#) section.

## 3.2. Writing the Description Files

There are two description files that are required for any port, whether they actually package or not. They are `pkg-descr` and `pkg-plist`. Their `pkg-` prefix distinguishes them from other files.

### 3.2.1. `pkg-descr`

This is a longer description of the port. One to a few paragraphs concisely explaining what the port does is sufficient.



### Note

This is *not* a manual or an in-depth description on how to use or compile the port! *Please be careful when copying from the README or manpage*; too often they are not a concise description of the port or are in an awkward format (e.g., manpages have justified spacing, which looks particularly bad with monospaced fonts).

A well-written `pkg-descr` describes the port completely enough that users would not have to consult the documentation or visit the website to understand what the software does, how it can be useful, or what particularly nice features it has. Mentioning certain requirements like a graphical toolkit, heavy dependencies, runtime environment, or implementation languages help users decide whether this port will work for them.



Include a URL to the official WWW homepage. Prepend *one* of the websites (pick the most common one) with **WWW:** (followed by single space) so that automated tools will work correctly. If the URI is the root of the website or directory, it should be terminated with a slash.



### Note

If the listed webpage for a port is not available, try to search the Internet first to see if the official site moved, was renamed, or is hosted elsewhere.

The following example shows how the `pkg-descr` should look:

```
This is a port of oneko, in which a cat chases a poor mouse all over
the screen.
:
(etc.)

WWW: http://www.oneko.org/
```

### 3.2.2. pkg-plist

This file lists all the files installed by the port. It is also called the “packing list” because the package is generated by packing the files listed here. The pathnames are relative to the installation prefix (usually `/usr/local`). If the port creates directories during installation, make sure to add `@dirrm` lines to remove them when the package is deleted.

Here is a small example:

```
bin/oneko
man/man1/oneko.1.gz
lib/X11/app-defaults/Oneko
lib/X11/oneko/cat1.xpm
lib/X11/oneko/cat2.xpm
lib/X11/oneko/mouse.xpm
@dirrm lib/X11/oneko
```

Refer to the [pkg-create\(8\)](#) manual page for details on the packing list.



### Note

It is recommended to keep all the filenames in this file sorted alphabetically. It will make verifying changes when upgrading the port much easier.



### Note

Creating a packing list manually can be a very tedious task. If the port installs a large numbers of files, [creating the packing list automatically](#) might save time.

There is only one case when `pkg-plist` can be omitted from a port. If the port installs just a handful of files, and perhaps directories, the files and directories may be listed in the variables `PLIST_FILES` and `PLIST_DIRS`, respectively, within the port's Makefile. For instance, we could get along without `pkg-plist` in the above `oneko` port by adding the following lines to the Makefile:

```
PLIST_FILES= bin/oneko \
man/man1/oneko.1.gz \
lib/X11/app-defaults/Oneko \
lib/X11/oneko/cat1.xpm \
lib/X11/oneko/cat2.xpm \
lib/X11/oneko/mouse.xpm
PLIST_DIRS= lib/X11/oneko
```

Of course, `PLIST_DIRS` should be left unset if a port installs no directories of its own.



### Note

Several ports can share a common directory. In that case, `PLIST_DIRS` should be replaced by `PLIST_DIRSTRY` so that the directory is removed only if empty, otherwise it is silently ignored. `PLIST_DIRS` and `PLIST_DIRSTRY` are equivalent to using `@dirrm` and `@dirrmtry` in `pkg-plist`, as described in [Section 7.2.1, “Cleaning Up Empty Directories”](#).

The price for this way of listing a port's files and directories is that then command sequences described in [pkg-create\(8\)](#) cannot be used. Therefore, it is suitable only for simple ports and makes them even simpler. At the same time, it has the advantage of reducing the number of files in the ports collection. Please consider using this technique before resorting to `pkg-plist`.

Later we will see how `pkg-plist` and `PLIST_FILES` can be used to fulfill [more sophisticated tasks](#).

## 3.3. Creating the Checksum File

Just type `make makesum`. The ports make rules will automatically generate the file `distinfo`.

## 3.4. Testing the Port

Make sure that the port rules do exactly what is desired, including packaging up the port. These are the important points to verify:

- `pkg-plist` does not contain anything not installed by the port.
- `pkg-plist` contains everything that is installed by the port.
- The port can be installed using the `install` target. This verifies that the install script works correctly.
- The port can be deinstalled properly using the `deinstall` target. This verifies that the deinstall script works correctly.
- Make sure that `make package` can be run as a normal user (that is, not as `root`). If that fails, `NEED_ROOT=yes` must be added to the port `Makefile`.

Procedure 3.1. Recommended Test Ordering

1. `make stage`
2. `make check-orphans`
3. `make package`
4. `make install`
5. `make deinstall`
6. `pkg add package-filename`

#### 7. `make package` (as user)

Make certain no warnings are shown in any of the stages.

Thorough automated testing can be done with [ports-mgmt/tinderbox](#) or [ports-mgmt/poudriere](#) from the Ports Collection. These applications maintain jails where all of the steps shown above can be tested without affecting the state of the host system.

## 3.5. Checking the Port with `portlint`

Please use `portlint` to see if the port conforms to our guidelines. The [ports-mgmt/portlint](#) program is part of the ports collection. In particular, check that the `Makefile` is in the right shape and the `package` is named appropriately.

## 3.6. Submitting the New Port

Before submitting the new port, read the [DOs and DON'Ts](#) section.

Once happy with the port, the only thing remaining is to put it in the main FreeBSD ports tree and make everybody else happy about it too. We do not need the `work` directory or the `pkgname.tgz` package, so delete them now.

Next, build the [shar\(1\)](#) file. Assuming the port is called `oneko`, `cd` to the directory above where the `oneko` directory is located, and then type: `shar `find oneko` > oneko.shar`

Include `oneko.shar` in a bug report and send it with [send-pr\(1\)](#). See [Bug Reports and General Commentary](#) for more information about [send-pr\(1\)](#).

Classify the bug report as Category `ports` and Class `change-request`. Do *not* mark the report confidential! Add a short description of the program to the Description field of the PR (perhaps a short version of the `COMMENT`), and add the `.shar` file to the Fix field.



### Note

Giving a good description in the synopsis of the problem report makes the work of port committers a lot easier. We prefer something like “New port: `<category>/<portname>` `<short description of the port>`” for new ports. Using this scheme makes it easier and faster to begin the work of committing the new port.

One more time, *do not include the original source distfile, the work directory, or the package built with `make package`*; and, do use [shar\(1\)](#) for new ports, not [diff\(1\)](#).

After submitting the port, please be patient. The time needed to include a new port in FreeBSD can vary from a few days to a few months. The list of pending port PRs can be viewed at <http://www.FreeBSD.org/cgi/query-pr-summary.cgi?category=ports>.

After looking at the new port, we will reply if necessary, and put it in the tree. Your name will also be added to the list of [Additional FreeBSD Contributors](#) and other files.



# Chapter 4. Slow Porting

Okay, so it was not that simple, and the port required some modifications to get it to work. In this section, we will explain, step by step, how to modify it to get it to work with the ports paradigm.

## 4.1. How Things Work

First, this is the sequence of events which occurs when the user first types `make` in your port's directory. You may find that having `bsd.port.mk` in another window while you read this really helps to understand it.

But do not worry if you do not really understand what `bsd.port.mk` is doing, not many people do... :-)

1. The `fetch` target is run. The `fetch` target is responsible for making sure that the tarball exists locally in `DISTDIR`. If `fetch` cannot find the required files in `DISTDIR` it will look up the `URL MASTER_SITES`, which is set in the Makefile, as well as our FTP mirrors where we put distfiles as backup. It will then attempt to fetch the named distribution file with `FETCH`, assuming that the requesting site has direct access to the Internet. If that succeeds, it will save the file in `DISTDIR` for future use and proceed.
2. The `extract` target is run. It looks for your port's distribution file (typically a gzipped tarball) in `DISTDIR` and unpacks it into a temporary subdirectory specified by `WRKDIR` (defaults to `work`).
3. The `patch` target is run. First, any patches defined in `PATCHFILES` are applied. Second, if any patch files named `patch-*` are found in `PATCHDIR` (defaults to the `files` subdirectory), they are applied at this time in alphabetical order.
4. The `configure` target is run. This can do any one of many different things.
  1. If it exists, `scripts/configure` is run.
  2. If `HAS_CONFIGURE` or `GNU_CONFIGURE` is set, `WRKSRCSRC/configure` is run.
5. The `build` target is run. This is responsible for descending into the port's private working directory (`WRKSRCSRC`) and building it.
6. The `stage` target is run. This puts the final set of built files into a temporary directory (`STAGEDIR`, see [Section 6.1, "Staging"](#)). The hierarchy of this directory mirrors that of the system on which the package will be installed.
7. The `package` target is run. This creates a package using the files from the temporary directory created during the stage target and the port's `pkg-plist`.

8. The `install` target is run. This install the package created during the `package` target into the host system.

The above are the default actions. In addition, you can define targets *pre- something* or *post- something*, or put scripts with those names, in the `scripts` subdirectory, and they will be run before or after the default actions are done.

For example, if you have a `post-extract` target defined in your `Makefile`, and a file `pre-build` in the `scripts` subdirectory, the `post-extract` target will be called after the regular extraction actions, and the `pre-build` script will be executed before the default build rules are done. It is recommended that you use `Makefile` targets if the actions are simple enough, because it will be easier for someone to figure out what kind of non-default action the port requires.

The default actions are done by the `bsd.port.mk` targets *do- something*. For example, the commands to extract a port are in the target `do-extract`. If you are not happy with the default target, you can fix it by redefining the *do- something* target in your `Makefile`.



### Note

The “main” targets (e.g., `extract`, `configure`, etc.) do nothing more than make sure all the stages up to that one are completed and call the real targets or scripts, and they are not intended to be changed. If you want to fix the extraction, fix `do-extract`, but never ever change the way `extract` operates! Additionally, the target `post-deinstall` is invalid and is not run by the ports infrastructure.

Now that you understand what goes on when the user types `make install`, let us go through the recommended steps to create the perfect port.

## 4.2. Getting the Original Sources

Get the original sources (normally) as a compressed tarball (`foo.tar.gz` or `foo.tar.bz2`) and copy it into `DISTDIR`. Always use *mainstream* sources when and where you can.

You will need to set the variable `MASTER_SITES` to reflect where the original tarball resides. You will find convenient shorthand definitions for most mainstream sites in `bsd.sites.mk`. Please use these sites—and the associated definitions—if at all possible, to help avoid the problem of having the same information repeated over again many times in the source base. As these sites tend to change over time, this becomes a maintenance nightmare for everyone involved.



If you cannot find a FTP/HTTP site that is well-connected to the net, or can only find sites that have irritatingly non-standard formats, you might want to put a copy on a reliable FTP or HTTP server that you control (e.g., your home page).

If you cannot find somewhere convenient and reliable to put the distfile we can “house” it ourselves on `ftp.FreeBSD.org` ; however, this is the least-preferred solution. The distfile must be placed into `~/public_distfiles/` of someone's `freefall` account. Ask the person who commits your port to do this. This person will also set `MASTER_SITES` to `MASTER_SITE_LOCAL` and `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` to their `freefall` username.

If your port's distfile changes all the time without any kind of version update by the author, consider putting the distfile on your home page and listing it as the first `MASTER_SITES` . If you can, try to talk the port author out of doing this; it really does help to establish some kind of source code control. Hosting your own version will prevent users from getting checksum mismatch errors, and also reduce the workload of maintainers of our FTP site. Also, if there is only one master site for the port, it is recommended that you house a backup at your site and list it as the second `MASTER_SITES` .

If your port requires some additional ‘patches’ that are available on the Internet, fetch them too and put them in `DISTDIR`. Do not worry if they come from a site other than where you got the main source tarball, we have a way to handle these situations (see the description of [PATCHFILES](#) below).

### 4.3. Modifying the Port

Unpack a copy of the tarball in a private directory and make whatever changes are necessary to get the port to compile properly under the current version of FreeBSD. Keep *careful track* of everything you do, as you will be automating the process shortly. Everything, including the deletion, addition, or modification of files should be doable using an automated script or patch file when your port is finished.

If your port requires significant user interaction/customization to compile or install, you should take a look at one of Larry Wall's classic `Configure` scripts and perhaps do something similar yourself. The goal of the new ports collection is to make each port as “plug-and-play” as possible for the end-user while using a minimum of disk space.



#### Note

Unless explicitly stated, patch files, scripts, and other files you have created and contributed to the FreeBSD ports collection are assumed to be covered by the standard BSD copyright conditions.

## 4.4. Patching

In the preparation of the port, files that have been added or changed can be recorded with `diff(1)` for later feeding to `patch(1)`. Doing this with a typical file involves saving a copy of the original file before making any changes using a `.orig` suffix.

```
% cp file file.orig
```

After all changes have been made, `cd` back to the port directory. Use `make makepatch` to generate updated patch files in the `files` directory.

### 4.4.1. General Rules for Patching

Patch files are stored in `PATCHDIR`, usually `files/`, from where they will be automatically applied. All patches must be relative to `WRKSRCDIR`. Typically `WRKSRCDIR` is a subdirectory of `WRKDIR`, the directory where the distfile is extracted. Use `make -V WRKSRCDIR` to see the actual path. The patch names are to follow these rules:

- Avoid having more than one patch modify the same file. For example, having both `patch-foobar.c` and `patch-foobar.c2` making changes to `${WRKSRCDIR}/foobar.c` makes them fragile and difficult to debug.
- When creating names for patch files, replace slashes (/) with two underscores (\_\_). For example, to patch a file named `src/freetype_joystick.c`, name the corresponding patch `patch-src__freetype_joystick.c`. Do not name patches like `patch-aa` or `patch-ab`. Always use the path and file name in patch names. Using `make makepatch` automatically generates the correct names.
- A patch may modify multiple files if the changes are related and the patch is named appropriately. For example, `patch-add-missing-stdlib.h`.
- Only use characters `[-+._a-zA-Z0-9]` for naming patches. In particular, *do not use* `::` as a path separator, use `__` instead.

Minimize the amount of non-functional whitespace changes in patches. It is common in the Open Source world for projects to share large amounts of a code base, but obey different style and indenting rules. When taking a working piece of functionality from one project to fix similar areas in another, please be careful: the resulting patch may be full of non-functional changes. It not only increases the size of the ports repository but makes it hard to find out what exactly caused the problem and what was changed at all.

If a file must be deleted, do it in the `post-extract` target rather than as part of the patch.

### 4.4.2. Manual Patch Generation



#### Note

Manual patch creation is usually not necessary. Automatic patch generation as described earlier in this section is the preferred method. However, manual patching may be required occasionally.

Patches are saved into files named `patch-*` where `*` indicates the pathname of the file that is patched, such as `patch-Imakefile` or `patch-src-config.h`.

After the file has been modified, `diff(1)` is used to record the differences between the original and the modified version. `-u` causes `diff(1)` to produce “unified” diffs, the preferred form.

```
% diff -u file.orig file > patch-pathname-file
```

When generating patches for new, added files, `-N` is used to tell `diff(1)` to treat the non-existent original file as if it existed but was empty:

```
% diff -u -N newfile.orig newfile > patch-pathname-newfile
```

Do not add `$FreeBSD$` RCS strings in patches. When patches are added to the Subversion repository with `svn add`, the `fbbsd:nokeywords` property is set to `yes` automatically so keywords in the patch are not modified when committed. The property can be added manually with `svn propset fbbsd:nokeywords yes files...`

Using the `recurse (-r)` option to `diff(1)` to generate patches is fine, but please look at the resulting patches to make sure there is no unnecessary junk in there. In particular, diffs between two backup files, Makefiles when the port uses `Imake` or `GNU configure`, etc., are unnecessary and should be deleted. If it was necessary to edit `configure.in` and run `autoconf` to regenerate `configure`, do not take the diffs of `configure` (it often grows to a few thousand lines!). Instead, define `USE_AUTOTOOLS=autoconf:261` and take the diffs of `configure.in`.

### 4.4.3. Simple Automatic Replacements

Simple replacements can be performed directly from the port Makefile using the in-place mode of `sed(1)`. This is useful when changes use the value of a variable:

```
post-patch:
    @${REINPLACE_CMD} -e 's|for Linux|for FreeBSD|g' ${WRKSRC}/
    README
```

Quite often, software being ported uses the CR/LF convention in source files. This may cause problems with further patching, compiler warnings, or script execution (like `/bin/`

sh^M not found.) To quickly convert all files from CR/LF to just LF, add this entry to the port Makefile:

```
USES= dos2unix
```

A list of specific files to convert can be given:

```
USES= dos2unix
DOS2UNIX_FILES= util.c util.h
```

Use `DOS2UNIX_REGEX` to convert a group of files across subdirectories. Its argument is a [find\(1\)](#)-compatible regular expression. More on the format is in [re\\_format\(7\)](#). This option is useful for converting all files of a given extension. For example, convert all source code files, leaving binary files intact:

```
USES= dos2unix
DOS2UNIX_REGEX= .*\.([ch]|cpp)
```

A similar option is `DOS2UNIX_GLOB`, which runs `find` for each element listed in it.

```
USES= dos2unix
DOS2UNIX_GLOB= *.c *.cpp *.h
```

## 4.5. Configuring

Include any additional customization commands in your configure script and save it in the `scripts` subdirectory. As mentioned above, you can also do this with Makefile targets and/or scripts with the name `pre-configure` or `post-configure`.

## 4.6. Handling User Input

If your port requires user input to build, configure, or install, you must set `IS_INTERACTIVE` in your Makefile. This will allow “overnight builds” to skip your port if the user sets the variable `BATCH` in his environment (and if the user sets the variable `INTERACTIVE`, then *only* those ports requiring interaction are built). This will save a lot of wasted time on the set of machines that continually build ports (see below).

It is also recommended that if there are reasonable default answers to the questions, you check the `PACKAGE_BUILDING` variable and turn off the interactive script when it is set. This will allow us to build the packages for CDROMs and FTP.

# Chapter 5. Configuring the Makefile

Configuring the Makefile is pretty simple, and again we suggest that you look at existing examples before starting. Also, there is a [sample Makefile](#) in this handbook, so take a look and please follow the ordering of variables and sections in that template to make your port easier for others to read.

Now, consider the following problems in sequence as you design your new Makefile:

## 5.1. The Original Source

Does it live in `DISTDIR` as a standard gzipped tarball named something like `foozoliX-1.2.tar.gz` ? If so, you can go on to the next step. If not, you should look at overriding any of the `DISTVERSION` , `DISTNAME`, `EXTRACT_CMD` , `EXTRACT_BEFORE_ARGS` , `EXTRACT_AFTER_ARGS` , `EXTRACT_SUFFIX` , or `DISTFILES` variables, depending on how alien a format your port's distribution file is.

In the worst case, you can simply create your own `do-extract` target to override the default, though this should be rarely, if ever, necessary.

## 5.2. Naming

The first part of the port's Makefile names the port, describes its version number, and lists it in the correct category.

### 5.2.1. `PORTNAME` and `PORTVERSION`

You should set `PORTNAME` to the base name of your port, and `PORTVERSION` to the version number of the port.



#### Warning

Package name should be unique among all of the ports tree, check that there is not already a port with the same `PORTNAME` and if there is add one of [PKGNAMEPREFIX](#) or [PKGNAME\\_SUFFIX](#).

## 5.2.2. PORTREVISION and PORTEPOCH

### 5.2.2.1. PORTREVISION

The `PORTREVISION` variable is a monotonically increasing value which is reset to 0 with every increase of `PORTVERSION` (i.e., every time a new official vendor release is made), and appended to the package name if non-zero. Changes to `PORTREVISION` are used by automated tools (e.g., `pkg version`, see [pkg-version\(8\)](#)) to highlight the fact that a new package is available.

`PORTREVISION` should be increased each time a change is made to the port that changes the generated package in any way. That includes changes that only affect a package built with non-default [options](#).

Examples of when `PORTREVISION` should be bumped:

- Addition of patches to correct security vulnerabilities, bugs, or to add new functionality to the port.
- Changes to the port `Makefile` to enable or disable compile-time options in the package.
- Changes in the packing list or the install-time behavior of the package (e.g., change to a script which generates initial data for the package, like `ssh` host keys).
- Version bump of a port's shared library dependency (in this case, someone trying to install the old package after installing a newer version of the dependency will fail since it will look for the old `libfoo.x` instead of `libfoo.(x+1)`).
- Silent changes to the port distfile which have significant functional differences, i.e., changes to the distfile requiring a correction to `distinfo` with no corresponding change to `PORTVERSION`, where a `diff -ru` of the old and new versions shows non-trivial changes to the code.

Examples of changes which do not require a `PORTREVISION` bump:

- Style changes to the port skeleton with no functional change to what appears in the resulting package.
- Changes to `MASTER_SITES` or other functional changes to the port which do not affect the resulting package.
- Trivial patches to the distfile such as correction of typos, which are not important enough that users of the package should go to the trouble of upgrading.
- Build fixes which cause a package to become compilable where it was previously failing (as long as the changes do not introduce any functional change on any other platforms).

on which the port did previously build). Since `PORTREVISION` reflects the content of the package, if the package was not previously buildable then there is no need to increase `PORTREVISION` to mark a change.

A rule of thumb is to ask yourself whether a change committed to a port is something which everyone would benefit from having (either because of an enhancement, fix, or by virtue that the new package will actually work at all), and weigh that against that fact that it will cause everyone who regularly updates their ports tree to be compelled to update. If yes, the `PORTREVISION` should be bumped.

### 5.2.2.2. PORTEPOCH

From time to time a software vendor or FreeBSD porter will do something silly and release a version of their software which is actually numerically less than the previous version. An example of this is a port which goes from `foo-20000801` to `foo-1.0` (the former will be incorrectly treated as a newer version since 20000801 is a numerically greater value than 1).



#### Tip

The results of version number comparisons are not always obvious. `pkg version` (see [pkg-version\(8\)](#)) can be used to test the comparison of two version number strings. For example:

```
% pkg version -t 0.031 0.29
>
```

The `>` output indicates that version 0.031 is considered greater than version 0.29, which may not have been obvious to the porter.

In situations such as this, the `PORTEPOCH` version should be increased. If `PORTEPOCH` is nonzero it is appended to the package name as described in section 0 above. `PORTEPOCH` must never be decreased or reset to zero, because that would cause comparison to a package from an earlier epoch to fail (i.e., the package would not be detected as out of date): the new version number (e.g., `1.0.1` in the above example) is still numerically less than the previous version (20000801), but the `,1` suffix is treated specially by automated tools and found to be greater than the implied suffix `,0` on the earlier package.

Dropping or resetting `PORTEPOCH` incorrectly leads to no end of grief; if you do not understand the above discussion, please keep after it until you do, or ask questions on the mailing lists.

It is expected that `PORTEPOCH` will not be used for the majority of ports, and that sensible use of `PORTVERSION` can often preempt it becoming necessary if a future release of

the software should change the version structure. However, care is needed by FreeBSD porters when a vendor release is made without an official version number — such as a code “snapshot” release. The temptation is to label the release with the release date, which will cause problems as in the example above when a new “official” release is made.

For example, if a snapshot release is made on the date 20000917, and the previous version of the software was version 1.2, the snapshot release should be given a `PORTVERSION` of 1.2.20000917 or similar, not 20000917, so that the succeeding release, say 1.3, is still a numerically greater value.

### 5.2.2.3. Example of `PORTREVISION` and `PORTEPOCH` Usage

The `gtkmumble` port, version 0.10, is committed to the ports collection:

```
PORTNAME= gtkmumble
PORTVERSION= 0.10
```

`PKGNAME` becomes `gtkmumble-0.10`.

A security hole is discovered which requires a local FreeBSD patch. `PORTREVISION` is bumped accordingly.

```
PORTNAME= gtkmumble
PORTVERSION= 0.10
PORTREVISION= 1
```

`PKGNAME` becomes `gtkmumble-0.10_1`

A new version is released by the vendor, numbered 0.2 (it turns out the author actually intended 0.10 to actually mean 0.1.0, not “what comes after 0.9” - oops, too late now). Since the new minor version 2 is numerically less than the previous version 10, the `PORTEPOCH` must be bumped to manually force the new package to be detected as “newer”. Since it is a new vendor release of the code, `PORTREVISION` is reset to 0 (or removed from the `Makefile`).

```
PORTNAME= gtkmumble
PORTVERSION= 0.2
PORTEPOCH= 1
```

`PKGNAME` becomes `gtkmumble-0.2,1`

The next release is 0.3. Since `PORTEPOCH` never decreases, the version variables are now:

```
PORTNAME= gtkmumble
PORTVERSION= 0.3
PORTEPOCH= 1
```

`PKGNAME` becomes `gtkmumble-0.3,1`





## Note

If `PORTEPOCH` were reset to 0 with this upgrade, someone who had installed the `gtkmumble-0.10_1` package would not detect the `gtkmumble-0.3` package as newer, since 3 is still numerically less than 10. Remember, this is the whole point of `PORTEPOCH` in the first place.

### 5.2.3. PKGNAMEPREFIX and PKGNAMESUFFIX

Two optional variables, `PKGNAMEPREFIX` and `PKGNAMESUFFIX`, are combined with `PORTNAME` and `PORTVERSION` to form `PKGNAME` as `${PKGNAMEPREFIX}${PORTNAME}${PKGNAMESUFFIX}-${PORTVERSION}`. Make sure this conforms to our [guidelines for a good package name](#). In particular, you are *not* allowed to use a hyphen (-) in `PORTVERSION`. Also, if the package name has the *language-* or the *-compiled.specifcs* part (see below), use `PKGNAMEPREFIX` and `PKGNAMESUFFIX`, respectively. Do not make them part of `PORTNAME`.

### 5.2.4. Package Naming Conventions

These are the conventions to follow when naming packages. This is to make the package directory easy to scan, as there are already thousands of packages and users are going to turn away if they hurt their eyes!

Package names take the form of *language\_region-name-compiled.specifcs-version.numbers*.

The package name is defined as `${PKGNAMEPREFIX}${PORTNAME}${PKGNAMESUFFIX}-${PORTVERSION}`. Make sure to set the variables to conform to that format.

#### *language\_region-*

FreeBSD strives to support the native language of its users. The *language-* part is a two letter abbreviation of the natural language defined by ISO-639 when the port is specific to a certain language. Examples are `ja` for Japanese, `ru` for Russian, `vi` for Vietnamese, `zh` for Chinese, `ko` for Korean and `de` for German.

If the port is specific to a certain region within the language area, add the two letter country code as well. Examples are `en_US` for US English and `fr_CH` for Swiss French.

The *language-* part is set in the `PKGNAMEPREFIX` variable.

#### *name*

The first letter of the name part should be lowercase. (The rest of the name may contain capital letters, so use your own discretion when converting a software name

that has some capital letters in it.) There is a tradition of naming Perl 5 modules by prepending `p5-` and converting the double-colon separator to a hyphen. For example, the `Data::Dumper` module becomes `p5-Data-Dumper`.

Make sure that the port's name and version are clearly separated and placed into the `PORTNAME` and `PORTVERSION` variables. The only reason for `PORTNAME` to contain a version part is if the upstream distribution is really named that way, as in the `textproc/libxml2` or `japanese/kinput2-freewnn` ports. Otherwise, the `PORTNAME` should not contain any version-specific information. It is quite normal for several ports to have the same `PORTNAME`, as the `www/apache*` ports do; in that case, different versions (and different index entries) are distinguished by the `PKGNAMEPREFIX` and `PKGNAME_SUFFIX` values.

#### *-compiled.specifcs*

If the port can be built with different [hardcoded defaults](#) (usually part of the directory name in a family of ports), the *-compiled.specifcs* part should state the compiled-in defaults (the hyphen is optional). Examples are paper size and font units.

The *-compiled.specifcs* part is set in the `PKGNAME_SUFFIX` variable.

#### *-version.numbers*

The version string follows a dash (-) and is a period-separated list of integers and single lowercase alphabetic. In particular, it is not permissible to have another dash inside the version string. The only exception is the string `p1` (meaning “patchlevel”), which can be used *only* when there are no major and minor version numbers in the software. If the software version has strings like “alpha”, “beta”, “rc”, or “pre”, take the first letter and put it immediately after a period. If the version string continues after those names, the numbers should follow the single alphabet without an extra period between them.

The idea is to make it easier to sort ports by looking at the version string. In particular, make sure version number components are always delimited by a period, and if the date is part of the string, use the `0.0.yyyy.mm.dd` format, not `dd.mm.yyyy` or the non-Y2K compliant `yy.mm.dd` format. It is important to prefix the version with `0.0.` in case a release with an actual version number is made, which would of course be numerically less than `yyyy`.



### Warning

Package name must be unique among all of the ports tree, check that there is not already a port with the same `PORTNAME` and if there is add one of [PKGNAMEPREFIX](#) or [PKGNAME\\_SUFFIX](#).

## Chapter 5. Configuring the Makefile

---

Here are some (real) examples on how to convert the name as called by the software authors to a suitable package name:

Distribution Name	PKGNAMEPRE-FIX	PORTNAME	PKGNAMEUF-FIX	PORTVERSION	Reason
mule-2.2.2	(empty)	mule	(empty)	2.2.2	No changes required
Emi-Clock-1.0.2	(empty)	emiclock	(empty)	1.0.2	No uppercase names for single programs
rdist-1.3alpha	(empty)	rdist	(empty)	1.3.a	No strings like alpha allowed
es-0.9-beta1	(empty)	es	(empty)	0.9.b1	No strings like beta allowed
mailman-2.0rc1	(empty)	mailman	(empty)	2.0.r3	No strings like rc allowed
v3.3beta021.src	(empty)	tiff	(empty)	3.3	What the heck was that anyway?
tvtnwm	(empty)	tvtnwm	(empty)	pl11	Version string always required
piewm	(empty)	piewm	(empty)	1.0	Version string always required
xvgr-2.10pl1	(empty)	xvgr	(empty)	2.10.1	pl allowed only when no major/minor version numbers
gawk-2.15.6	ja-	gawk	(empty)	2.15.6	Japanese language version
psutils-1.13	(empty)	psutils	-letter	1.13	Paper size hardcoded at

Distribution Name	PKGNAMEPRE-FIX	PORTNAME	PKGNAME_SUFFIX	PORTVERSION	Reason
					package build time
pkfonts	(empty)	pkfonts	300	1.0	Package for 300dpi fonts

If there is absolutely no trace of version information in the original source and it is unlikely that the original author will ever release another version, just set the version string to 1.0 (like the `piewm` example above). Otherwise, ask the original author or use the date string (`0.0.yyyy.mm.dd`) as the version.

## 5.3. Categorization

### 5.3.1. CATEGORIES

When a package is created, it is put under `/usr/ports/packages/All` and links are made from one or more subdirectories of `/usr/ports/packages`. The names of these subdirectories are specified by the variable `CATEGORIES`. It is intended to make life easier for the user when he is wading through the pile of packages on the FTP site or the CDROM. Please take a look at the [current list of categories](#) and pick the ones that are suitable for your port.

This list also determines where in the ports tree the port is imported. If you put more than one category here, it is assumed that the port files will be put in the subdirectory with the name in the first category. See [below](#) for more discussion about how to pick the right categories.

### 5.3.2. Current List of Categories

Here is the current list of port categories. Those marked with an asterisk (\*) are *virtual* categories—those that do not have a corresponding subdirectory in the ports tree. They are only used as secondary categories, and only for search purposes.



#### Note

For non-virtual categories, you will find a one-line description in the `COMMENT` in that subdirectory's `Makefile`.

Category	Description	Notes
accessibility	Ports to help disabled users.	

Category	Description	Notes
afterstep*	Ports to support the <a href="#">AfterStep</a> window manager.	
arabic	Arabic language support.	
archivers	Archiving tools.	
astro	Astronomical ports.	
audio	Sound support.	
benchmarks	Benchmarking utilities.	
biology	Biology-related software.	
cad	Computer aided design tools.	
chinese	Chinese language support.	
comms	Communication software.	Mostly software to talk to your serial port.
converters	Character code converters.	
databases	Databases.	
deskutils	Things that used to be on the desktop before computers were invented.	
devel	Development utilities.	Do not put libraries here just because they are libraries—unless they truly do not belong anywhere else, they should not be in this category.
dns	DNS-related software.	
docs*	Meta-ports for FreeBSD documentation.	
editors	General editors.	Specialized editors go in the section for those tools (e.g., a mathematical-formula editor will go in <code>math</code> ).
elisp*	Emacs-lisp ports.	
emulators	Emulators for other operating systems.	Terminal emulators do <i>not</i> belong here—X-based ones should go to <code>x11</code> and text-based ones to either <code>comms</code>

## Current List of Categories

Category	Description	Notes
		or misc, depending on the exact functionality.
finance	Monetary, financial and related applications.	
french	French language support.	
ftp	FTP client and server utilities.	If your port speaks both FTP and HTTP, put it in ftp with a secondary category of www.
games	Games.	
geography*	Geography-related software.	
german	German language support.	
gnome*	Ports from the <a href="#">GNOME</a> Project.	
gnustep*	Software related to the GNUstep desktop environment.	
graphics	Graphics utilities.	
hamradio*	Software for amateur radio.	
haskell*	Software related to the Haskell language.	
hebrew	Hebrew language support.	
hungarian	Hungarian language support.	
ipv6*	IPv6 related software.	
irc	Internet Relay Chat utilities.	
japanese	Japanese language support.	
java	Software related to the Java™ language.	The java category must not be the only one for a port. Save for ports directly related to the Java language, porters are also encouraged not to use java as the main category of a port.
kde*	Ports from the <a href="#">KDE</a> Project.	

## Chapter 5. Configuring the Makefile

Category	Description	Notes
kld*	Kernel loadable modules.	
korean	Korean language support.	
lang	Programming languages.	
linux*	Linux applications and support utilities.	
lisp*	Software related to the Lisp language.	
mail	Mail software.	
math	Numerical computation software and other utilities for mathematics.	
mbone*	MBone applications.	
misc	Miscellaneous utilities	Basically things that do not belong anywhere else. If at all possible, try to find a better category for your port than misc, as ports tend to get overlooked in here.
multimedia	Multimedia software.	
net	Miscellaneous networking software.	
net-im	Instant messaging software.	
net-mgmt	Networking management software.	
net-p2p	Peer to peer network applications.	
news	USENET news software.	
palm	Software support for the <a href="#">Palm™</a> series.	
parallel*	Applications dealing with parallelism in computing.	
pear*	Ports related to the Pear PHP framework.	
perl5*	Ports that require Perl version 5 to run.	

Category	Description	Notes
plan9*	Various programs from <a href="#">Plan9</a> .	
polish	Polish language support.	
ports-mgmt	Ports for managing, installing and developing FreeBSD ports and packages.	
portuguese	Portuguese language support.	
print	Printing software.	Desktop publishing tools (previewers, etc.) belong here too.
python*	Software related to the <a href="#">Python</a> language.	
ruby*	Software related to the <a href="#">Ruby</a> language.	
rubygems*	Ports of <a href="#">RubyGems</a> packages.	
russian	Russian language support.	
scheme*	Software related to the Scheme language.	
science	Scientific ports that do not fit into other categories such as astro, biology and math.	
security	Security utilities.	
shells	Command line shells.	
spanish*	Spanish language support.	
sysutils	System utilities.	
tcl*	Ports that use Tcl to run.	
textproc	Text processing utilities.	It does not include desktop publishing tools, which go to print.
tk*	Ports that use Tk to run.	
ukrainian	Ukrainian language support.	
vietnamese	Vietnamese language support.	



Category	Description	Notes
windowmaker*	Ports to support the WindowMaker window manager.	
www	Software related to the World Wide Web.	HTML language support belongs here too.
x11	The X Window System and friends.	This category is only for software that directly supports the window system. Do not put regular X applications here; most of them should go into other x11-* categories (see below).
x11-clocks	X11 clocks.	
x11-drivers	X11 drivers.	
x11-fm	X11 file managers.	
x11-fonts	X11 fonts and font utilities.	
x11-servers	X11 servers.	
x11-themes	X11 themes.	
x11-toolkits	X11 toolkits.	
x11-wm	X11 window managers.	
xfce*	Ports related to the <a href="#">Xfce</a> desktop environment.	
zope*	<a href="#">Zope</a> support.	

### 5.3.3. Choosing the Right Category

As many of the categories overlap, you often have to choose which of the categories should be the primary category of your port. There are several rules that govern this issue. Here is the list of priorities, in decreasing order of precedence:

- The first category must be a physical category (see [above](#)). This is necessary to make the packaging work. Virtual categories and physical categories may be intermixed after that.
- Language specific categories always come first. For example, if your port installs Japanese X11 fonts, then your CATEGORIES line would read `japanese x11-fonts`.
- Specific categories are listed before less-specific ones. For instance, an HTML editor should be listed as `www editors`, not the other way around. Also, you should not list net

when the port belongs to any of `irc`, `mail`, `news`, `security`, or `www`, as `net` is included implicitly.

- `x11` is used as a secondary category only when the primary category is a natural language. In particular, you should not put `x11` in the category line for X applications.
- Emacs modes should be placed in the same ports category as the application supported by the mode, not in `editors`. For example, an Emacs mode to edit source files of some programming language should go into `lang`.
- Ports which install loadable kernel modules should have the virtual category `kld` in their `CATEGORIES` line. This is one of the things handled automatically by adding `kmod` to the `USES` line.
- `misc` should not appear with any other non-virtual category. If you have `misc` with something else in your `CATEGORIES` line, that means you can safely delete `misc` and just put the port in that other subdirectory!
- If your port truly does not belong anywhere else, put it in `misc`.

If you are not sure about the category, please put a comment to that effect in your [send-pr\(1\)](#) submission so we can discuss it before we import it. If you are a committer, send a note to the [FreeBSD ports mailing list](#) so we can discuss it first. Too often, new ports are imported to the wrong category only to be moved right away. This causes unnecessary and undesirable bloat in the master source repository.

### 5.3.4. Proposing a New Category

As the Ports Collection has grown over time, various new categories have been introduced. New categories can either be *virtual* categories—those that do not have a corresponding subdirectory in the ports tree— or *physical* categories—those that do. The following text discusses the issues involved in creating a new physical category so that you can understand them before you propose one.

Our existing practice has been to avoid creating a new physical category unless either a large number of ports would logically belong to it, or the ports that would belong to it are a logically distinct group that is of limited general interest (for instance, categories related to spoken human languages), or preferably both.

The rationale for this is that such a change creates a [fair amount of work](#) for both the committers and also for all users who track changes to the Ports Collection. In addition, proposed category changes just naturally seem to attract controversy. (Perhaps this is because there is no clear consensus on when a category is “too big”, nor whether categories should lend themselves to browsing (and thus what number of categories would be an ideal number), and so forth.)

Here is the procedure:

1. Propose the new category on [FreeBSD ports mailing list](#). You should include a detailed rationale for the new category, including why you feel the existing categories are not sufficient, and the list of existing ports proposed to move. (If there are new ports pending in GNATS that would fit this category, list them too.) If you are the maintainer and/or submitter, respectively, mention that as it may help you to make your case.
2. Participate in the discussion.
3. If it seems that there is support for your idea, file a PR which includes both the rationale and the list of existing ports that need to be moved. Ideally, this PR should also include patches for the following:
  - Makefiles for the new ports once they are repocopied
  - Makefile for the new category
  - Makefile for the old ports' categories
  - Makefiles for ports that depend on the old ports
  - (for extra credit, you can include the other files that have to change, as per the procedure in the Committer's Guide.)
4. Since it affects the ports infrastructure and involves not only performing re-copies but also possibly running regression tests on the build cluster, the PR should be assigned to the Ports Management Team <[portmgr@FreeBSD.org](mailto:portmgr@FreeBSD.org)>.
5. If that PR is approved, a committer will need to follow the rest of the procedure that is [outlined in the Committer's Guide](#).

Proposing a new virtual category should be similar to the above but much less involved, since no ports will actually have to move. In this case, the only patches to include in the PR would be those to add the new category to the CATEGORIES of the affected ports.

### 5.3.5. Proposing Reorganizing All the Categories

Occasionally someone proposes reorganizing the categories with either a 2-level structure, or some other kind of keyword structure. To date, nothing has come of any of these proposals because, while they are very easy to make, the effort involved to retrofit the entire existing ports collection with any kind of reorganization is daunting to say the very least. Please read the history of these proposals in the mailing list archives before you post this idea; furthermore, you should be prepared to be challenged to offer a working prototype.

## 5.4. The Distribution Files

The second part of the `Makefile` describes the files that must be downloaded in order to build the port, and where they can be downloaded from.

### 5.4.1. `DISTVERSION/DISTNAME`

`DISTNAME` is the name of the port as called by the authors of the software. `DISTNAME` defaults to `${PORT-NAME}-${DISTVERSIONPREFIX}${DISTVERSION}${DISTVERSIONSUFFIX}`, and `DISTVERSION` defaults to `${PORTVERSION}` so override it only if necessary. `DISTNAME` is only used in two places. First, the distribution file list (`DISTFILES`) defaults to `${DISTNAME} ${EXTRACT_SUFX}`. Second, the distribution file is expected to extract into a subdirectory named `WRKSR`, which defaults to `work/${DISTNAME}`.

Some vendor's distribution names which do not fit into the `${PORT-NAME}-${PORTVERSION}` -scheme can be handled automatically by setting `DISTVERSION`. `PORTVERSION` will be derived from it automatically.



#### Note

Only one of `PORTVERSION` and `DISTVERSION` can be set at a time. If you set `DISTVERSION` and the derived `PORTVERSION` is not right, do not use `DISTVERSION`, set `PORTVERSION` to the right value and set `DISTNAME` with `PORTNAME` with either some computation of `PORTVERSION` or the verbatim upstream version.

The following table lists some examples of `DISTVERSION` and the derived `PORTVERSION`:

<code>DISTVERSION</code>	<code>PORTVERSION</code>
0.7.1d	0.7.1.d
10Alpha3	10.a3
3Beta7-pre2	3.b7.p2
8:f_17	8f.17



#### Note

`PKGNAMEPREFIX` and `PKGNAMEPREFIX` do not affect `DISTNAME`. Also note that if `WRKSR` is equal to `work/${DISTNAME}` while the original source archive is named something other than `${PORT-`

```
NAME}-${PORTVERSION}${EXTRACT_SUFX} , you should probably
leave DISTNAME alone— you are better off defining DISTFILES
than having to set both DISTNAME and WRKSRCS (and possibly
EXTRACT_SUFX ).
```

### 5.4.2. MASTER\_SITES

Record the directory part of the FTP/HTTP-URL pointing at the original tarball in `MASTER_SITES` . Do not forget the trailing slash (/)!

The make macros will try to use this specification for grabbing the distribution file with `FETCH` if they cannot find it already on the system.

It is recommended that you put multiple sites on this list, preferably from different continents. This will safeguard against wide-area network problems. We are even planning to add support for automatically determining the closest master site and fetching from there; having multiple sites will go a long way towards helping this effort.

If the original tarball is part of one of the popular archives such as SourceForge, GNU, or Perl CPAN, you may be able refer to those sites in an easy compact form using predefined macros (e.g., `SF`, `GNU` or `CPAN`). Simply set `MASTER_SITES` to one of these values. Here is an example:

```
MASTER_SITES= GNU/make
```

Or you can use the older expanded format, though there really are no reason to do so:

```
MASTER_SITES= ${MASTER_SITE_GNU}
MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR= make
```

These values and variables are defined in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.sites.mk` . There are new entries added all the time, so make sure to check the latest version of this file before submitting a port.

Several *magic* macros exist for popular sites with a predictable directory structure. For these, just use the abbreviation and the system will try to guess the correct subdirectory for you.

```
MASTER_SITES= SF
```

If the guess is incorrect, it can be overridden as follows.

```
MASTER_SITES= SF/stardict/WyabdcRealPeopleTTS/${PORTVERSION}
```

This can also be written as

```
MASTER_SITES= SF
MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR= stardict/WyabdcRealPeopleTTS/${PORTVERSION}
```

Table 5.1. Popular Magic MASTER\_SITES Macros

Macro	Assumed subdirectory
APACHE_JAKARTA	/dist/jakarta/\${PORTNAME:S,-,/,}/ source
BERLIOS	/\${PORTNAME:L}
CHEESESHOP	/packages/source/source/ \${DISTNAME:C/(.)*.*\1}/ \${DISTNAME:C/(.)*-[0-9].*\1}/
DEBIAN	/debian/pool/main/\${PORTNAME:C/ ^((lib)?).*\$/\1}/\${PORTNAME}
GCC	/pub/gcc/releases/\${DISTNAME}
GH	/\${GH_ACCOUNT}/\${GH_PROJECT}/ legacy.tar.gz/\${GH_TAGNAME}?dummy=/
GHC	/downloads/\${GH_ACCOUNT}/ \${GH_PROJECT}/
GNOME	/pub/GNOME/sources/ \${PORTNAME}/\${PORTVERSION:C/ ^([0-9]+\.[0-9]+).*\$/\1}
GNU	/gnu/\${PORTNAME}
HORDE	/pub/\${PORTNAME}
LOGILAB	/pub/\${PORTNAME}
MATE	/releases/\${PORTVERSION:C/^([0-9]+ \.[0-9]+).*\$/\1}
MOZDEV	/pub/mozdev/\${PORTNAME:L}
CPAN	/pub/CPAN/modules/by- module/\${PORTNAME:C/-.*//}
PYTHON	/ftp/python/ \${PYTHON_PORTVERSION:C/rc[0-9]//}
RUBYFORGE	/\${PORTNAME:L}
SAVANNAH	/\${PORTNAME:L}
SF	/project/\${PORTNAME:L}/ \${PORTNAME:L}/\${PORTVERSION}

#### 5.4.2.1. USE\_GITHUB

If the distribution file comes from a specific commit or tag on [GitHub](#) for which there is no officially released file, there is an easy way to set the right DISTNAME and MASTER\_SITES automatically. These variables are available:

Table 5.2. `USE_GITHUB` Description

Variable	Description	Default	Mandatory
<code>GH_ACCOUNT</code>	Account name of the GitHub user hosting the project	none	Mandatory
<code>GH_PROJECT</code>	Name of the project on GitHub	<code>\${PORTNAME}</code>	
<code>GH_TAGNAME</code>	Name of the tag to download (2.0.1, hash, ...) Using the name of a branch here is incorrect. It is possible to do <code>GH_TAGNAME=\${GH_COMMIT}</code> to do a snapshot	<code>\${DISTVERSION}</code>	
<code>GH_COMMIT</code>	first 7 digits of the commit that generated <code>GH_TAGNAME</code> (see <a href="#">git-describe(1)</a> )	none	Mandatory

### Example 5.1. Simple Use of `USE_GITHUB`

While trying to make a port for version 1.2.7 of `pkg` from the FreeBSD user on github, at <https://github.com/freebsd/pkg>, The Makefile would end up looking like this (slightly stripped for the example):

```
PORTNAME= pkg
PORTVERSION= 1.2.7

USE_GITHUB= yes
GH_ACCOUNT= freebsd
GH_COMMIT= f53e577
```

It will automatically have `MASTER_SITES` set to GH GHC and `WRKSRC` to `${WRKDIR}/freebsd-pkg-f53e577`.

### Example 5.2. More Complete Use of `USE_GITHUB`

While trying to make a port for the bleeding edge version of `pkg` from the FreeBSD user on github, at <https://github.com/freebsd/pkg>, The Makefile would end up looking like this (slightly stripped for the example):

```
PORTNAME=  pkg-devel
PORTVERSION= 1.3.0.a.20140411

USE_GITHUB= yes
GH_ACCOUNT= freebsd
GH_PROJECT= pkg
GH_TAGNAME= ${GH_COMMIT}
GH_COMMIT= 6dbb17b
```

It will automatically have `MASTER_SITES` set to `GH GHC` and `WRKSRC` to `${WRKDIR}/freebsd-pkg-6dbb17b`.

### 5.4.3. `EXTRACT_SUFX`

If you have one distribution file, and it uses an odd suffix to indicate the compression mechanism, set `EXTRACT_SUFX`.

For example, if the distribution file was named `foo.tar.gzip` instead of the more normal `foo.tar.gz`, you would write:

```
DISTNAME= foo
EXTRACT_SUFX= .tar.gzip
```

The `USES=tar[:xxx]`, `USES=lha` or `USES=zip` automatically set `EXTRACT_SUFX` to the most common archives extensions as necessary, see [Chapter 15, Values of `USES`](#) for more details. If neither of these are set then `EXTRACT_SUFX` defaults to `.tar.gz`.



#### Note

You never need to set both `EXTRACT_SUFX` and `DISTFILES`.

### 5.4.4. `DISTFILES`

Sometimes the names of the files to be downloaded have no resemblance to the name of the port. For example, it might be called `source.tar.gz` or similar. In other cases



the application's source code might be in several different archives, all of which must be downloaded.

If this is the case, set `DISTFILES` to be a space separated list of all the files that must be downloaded.

```
DISTFILES= source1.tar.gz source2.tar.gz
```

If not explicitly set, `DISTFILES` defaults to `${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFFIX}` .

### 5.4.5. EXTRACT\_ONLY

If only some of the `DISTFILES` must be extracted—for example, one of them is the source code, while another is an uncompressed document—list the filenames that must be extracted in `EXTRACT_ONLY` .

```
DISTFILES= source.tar.gz manual.html  
EXTRACT_ONLY= source.tar.gz
```

If *none* of the `DISTFILES` should be uncompressed then set `EXTRACT_ONLY` to the empty string.

```
EXTRACT_ONLY=
```

### 5.4.6. PATCHFILES

If your port requires some additional patches that are available by FTP or HTTP, set `PATCHFILES` to the names of the files and `PATCH_SITES` to the URL of the directory that contains them (the format is the same as `MASTER_SITES` ).

If the patch is not relative to the top of the source tree (i.e., `WRKSR`) because it contains some extra pathnames, set `PATCH_DIST_STRIP` accordingly. For instance, if all the pathnames in the patch have an extra `foozoliX-1.0/` in front of the filenames, then set `PATCH_DIST_STRIP=-p1` .

Do not worry if the patches are compressed; they will be decompressed automatically if the filenames end with `.Z`, `.gz`, `.bz2` or `.xz`.

If the patch is distributed with some other files, such as documentation, in a gzipped tarball, you cannot just use `PATCHFILES`. If that is the case, add the name and the location of the patch tarball to `DISTFILES` and `MASTER_SITES` . Then, use the `EXTRA_PATCHES` variable to point to those files and `bsd.port.mk` will automatically apply them for you. In particular, do *not* copy patch files into the `PATCHDIR` directory—that directory may not be writable.



### Tip

If there are multiple patches and they need mixed values for the strip parameter, it can be added alongside the patch name in PATCHFILES, e.g:

```
PATCHFILES= patch1 patch2:-p1
```

This does not conflict with [the master site grouping feature](#), the following also works:

```
PATCHFILES= patch2:-p1:source2
```



### Note

The tarball will have been extracted alongside the regular source by then, so there is no need to explicitly extract it if it is a regular gzipped or compressed tarball. If you do the latter, take extra care not to overwrite something that already exists in that directory. Also, do not forget to add a command to remove the copied patch in the pre-clean target.

## 5.4.7. Multiple Distribution Files or Patches from Different Sites and Subdirectories (MASTER\_SITES:n )

(Consider this to be a somewhat “advanced topic”; those new to this document may wish to skip this section at first).

This section has information on the fetching mechanism known as both MASTER\_SITES:n and MASTER\_SITES\_NN . We will refer to this mechanism as MASTER\_SITES:n .

A little background first. OpenBSD has a neat feature inside the DISTFILES and PATCHFILES variables which allows files and patches to be postfixed with :n identifiers. Here, n can be both [0-9] and denote a group designation. For example:

```
DISTFILES= alpha:0 beta:1
```

In OpenBSD, distribution file alpha will be associated with variable MASTER\_SITES0 instead of our common MASTER\_SITES and beta with MASTER\_SITES1 .

This is a very interesting feature which can decrease that endless search for the correct download site.

Just picture 2 files in `DISTFILES` and 20 sites in `MASTER_SITES`, the sites slow as hell where `beta` is carried by all sites in `MASTER_SITES`, and `alpha` can only be found in the 20th site. It would be such a waste to check all of them if the maintainer knew this beforehand, would it not? Not a good start for that lovely weekend!

Now that you have the idea, just imagine more `DISTFILES` and more `MASTER_SITES`. Surely our “distfiles survey meister” would appreciate the relief to network strain that this would bring.

In the next sections, information will follow on the FreeBSD implementation of this idea. We improved a bit on OpenBSD's concept.

### 5.4.7.1. Simplified Information

This section tells you how to quickly prepare fine grained fetching of multiple distribution files and patches from different sites and subdirectories. We describe here a case of simplified `MASTER_SITES:n` usage. This will be sufficient for most scenarios. However, if you need further information, you will have to refer to the next section.

Some applications consist of multiple distribution files that must be downloaded from a number of different sites. For example, Ghostscript consists of the core of the program, and then a large number of driver files that are used depending on the user's printer. Some of these driver files are supplied with the core, but many others must be downloaded from a variety of different sites.

To support this, each entry in `DISTFILES` may be followed by a colon and a “tag name”. Each site listed in `MASTER_SITES` is then followed by a colon, and the tag that indicates which distribution files should be downloaded from this site.

For example, consider an application with the source split in two parts, `source1.tar.gz` and `source2.tar.gz`, which must be downloaded from two different sites. The port's Makefile would include lines like [Example 5.3, “Simplified Use of `MASTER\_SITES:n` with One File Per Site”](#).

#### Example 5.3. Simplified Use of `MASTER_SITES:n` with One File Per Site

```
MASTER_SITES= ftp://ftp.example1.com/:source1 \
               ftp://ftp.example2.com/:source2
DISTFILES= source1.tar.gz:source1 \
           source2.tar.gz:source2
```

Multiple distribution files can have the same tag. Continuing the previous example, suppose that there was a third distfile, `source3.tar.gz`, that should be downloaded from

Multiple Distribution Files or Patches  
from Different Sites and Subdirectories

`ftp.example2.com`. The Makefile would then be written like [Example 5.4, “Simplified Use of MASTER\\_SITES:n with More Than One File Per Site”](#).  
(MASTER\_SITES:n )

### Example 5.4. Simplified Use of MASTER\_SITES:n with More Than One File Per Site

```
MASTER_SITES= ftp://ftp.example1.com/:source1 \  
               ftp://ftp.example2.com/:source2  
DISTFILES= source1.tar.gz:source1 \  
            source2.tar.gz:source2 \  
            source3.tar.gz:source2
```

#### 5.4.7.2. Detailed Information

Okay, so the previous section example did not reflect your needs? In this section we will explain in detail how the fine grained fetching mechanism MASTER\_SITES:n works and how you can modify your ports to use it.

1. Elements can be postfixed with :n where n is [^:, ]+, i.e., n could conceptually be any alphanumeric string but we will limit it to [a-zA-Z\_][0-9a-zA-Z\_]+ for now.

Moreover, string matching is case sensitive; i.e., n is different from N.

However, the following words cannot be used for postfixing purposes since they yield special meaning: default, all and ALL (they are used internally in item [ii](#)). Furthermore, DEFAULT is a special purpose word (check item [3](#)).

2. Elements postfixed with :n belong to the group n, :m belong to group m and so forth.
3. Elements without a postfix are groupless, i.e., they all belong to the special group DEFAULT. If you postfix any elements with DEFAULT, you are just being redundant unless you want to have an element belonging to both DEFAULT and other groups at the same time (check item [5](#)).

The following examples are equivalent but the first one is preferred:

```
MASTER_SITES= alpha
```

```
MASTER_SITES= alpha:DEFAULT
```

4. Groups are not exclusive, an element may belong to several different groups at the same time and a group can either have either several different elements or none at all. Repeated elements within the same group will be simply that, repeated elements.

5. When you want an element to belong to several groups at the same time, you can use the comma operator (,).

Instead of repeating it several times, each time with a different postfix, we can list several groups at once in a single postfix. For instance, `:m,n,o` marks an element that belongs to group `m`, `n` and `o`.

All the following examples are equivalent but the last one is preferred:

```
MASTER_SITES= alpha alpha:SOME_SITE
```

```
MASTER_SITES= alpha:DEFAULT alpha:SOME_SITE
```

```
MASTER_SITES= alpha:SOME_SITE,DEFAULT
```

```
MASTER_SITES= alpha:DEFAULT,SOME_SITE
```

6. All sites within a given group are sorted according to `MASTER_SORT_AWK`. All groups within `MASTER_SITES` and `PATCH_SITES` are sorted as well.
7. Group semantics can be used in any of the following variables `MASTER_SITES`, `PATCH_SITES`, `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR`, `PATCH_SITE_SUBDIR`, `DISTFILES`, and `PATCH_FILES` according to the following syntax:
  - a. All `MASTER_SITES`, `PATCH_SITES`, `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` and `PATCH_SITE_SUBDIR` elements must be terminated with the forward slash `/` character. If any elements belong to any groups, the group postfix `:n` must come right after the terminator `/`. The `MASTER_SITES:n` mechanism relies on the existence of the terminator `/` to avoid confusing elements where a `:n` is a valid part of the element with occurrences where `:n` denotes group `n`. For compatibility purposes, since the `/` terminator was not required before in both `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` and `PATCH_SITE_SUBDIR` elements, if the postfix immediate preceding character is not a `/` then `:n` will be considered a valid part of the element instead of a group postfix even if an element is postfixed with `:n`. See both [Example 5.5, “Detailed Use of MASTER\\_SITES:n in MASTER\\_SITE\\_SUBDIR”](#) and [Example 5.6, “Detailed Use of MASTER\\_SITES:n with Comma Operator, Multiple Files, Multiple Sites and Multiple Subdirectories”](#).

### Example 5.5. Detailed Use of `MASTER_SITES:n` in `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR`

```
MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR= old:n new/:NEW
```

- Directories within group `DEFAULT` -> `old:n`

- Directories within group NEW -> new

### Example 5.6. Detailed Use of MASTER\_SITES:n with Comma Operator, Multiple Files, Multiple Sites and Multiple Subdirectories

```
MASTER_SITES= http://site1/%SUBDIR%/ http://  
site2:/DEFAULT \  
http://site3:/group3 http://site4:/group4 \  
http://site5:/group5 http://site6:/group6 \  
http://site7:/DEFAULT,group6 \  
http://site8/%SUBDIR%:/group6,group7 \  
http://site9:/group8  
DISTFILES= file1 file2:DEFAULT file3:group3 \  
file4:group4,group5,group6 file5:grouping \  
file6:group7  
MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR= directory-trial:1 directory-  
n:/groupn \  
directory-one:/group6,DEFAULT \  
directory
```

The previous example results in the following fine grained fetching. Sites are listed in the exact order they will be used.

- file1 will be fetched from
  - MASTER\_SITE\_OVERRIDE
  - http://site1/directory-trial:1/
  - http://site1/directory-one/
  - http://site1/directory/
  - http://site2/
  - http://site7/
  - MASTER\_SITE\_BACKUP
- file2 will be fetched exactly as file1 since they both belong to the same group
  - MASTER\_SITE\_OVERRIDE

- `http://site1/directory-trial:1/`
- `http://site1/directory-one/`
- `http://site1/directory/`
- `http://site2/`
- `http://site7/`
- `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`
- `file3` will be fetched from
  - `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE`
  - `http://site3/`
  - `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`
- `file4` will be fetched from
  - `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE`
  - `http://site4/`
  - `http://site5/`
  - `http://site6/`
  - `http://site7/`
  - `http://site8/directory-one/`
  - `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`
- `file5` will be fetched from
  - `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE`
  - `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`
- `file6` will be fetched from
  - `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE`
  - `http://site8/`

Multiple Distribution Files or Patches  
from Different Sites and Subdirectories  
(MASTER\_SITES:n )

- MASTER\_SITE\_BACKUP

8. How do I group one of the special variables from `bsd.sites.mk`, e.g., `MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE` ?

See [Example 5.7, “Detailed Use of MASTER\\_SITES:n with MASTER\\_SITE\\_SOURCEFORGE ”](#).

#### Example 5.7. Detailed Use of MASTER\_SITES:n with MASTER\_SITE\_SOURCEFORGE

```
MASTER_SITES= http://site1/ ${MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE:S/  
$/:sourceforge,TEST/}  
DISTFILES= something.tar.gz:sourceforge
```

`something.tar.gz` will be fetched from all sites within `MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE` .

9. How do I use this with `PATCH*` variables?

All examples were done with `MASTER*` variables but they work exactly the same for `PATCH*` ones as can be seen in [Example 5.8, “Simplified Use of MASTER\\_SITES:n with PATCH\\_SITES ”](#).

#### Example 5.8. Simplified Use of MASTER\_SITES:n with PATCH\_SITES

```
PATCH_SITES= http://site1/ http://site2/:test  
PATCHFILES= patch1:test
```

### 5.4.7.3. What Does Change for Ports? What Does Not?

- i. All current ports remain the same. The `MASTER_SITES:n` feature code is only activated if there are elements postfixed with `:n` like elements according to the aforementioned syntax rules, especially as shown in item 7.



ii. The port targets remain the same: checksum, makesum, patch, configure, build, etc. With the obvious exceptions of do-fetch, fetch-list, master-sites and patch-sites.

- `do-fetch`: deploys the new grouping postfixes DISTFILES and PATCHFILES with their matching group elements within both MASTER\_SITES and PATCH\_SITES which use matching group elements within both MASTER\_SITE\_SUBDIR and PATCH\_SITE\_SUBDIR. Check [Example 5.6, “Detailed Use of MASTER\\_SITES:n with Comma Operator, Multiple Files, Multiple Sites and Multiple Subdirectories”](#).
- `fetch-list`: works like old `fetch-list` with the exception that it groups just like `do-fetch`.
- `master-sites` and `patch-sites`: (incompatible with older versions) only return the elements of group DEFAULT; in fact, they execute targets `master-sites-default` and `patch-sites-default` respectively.

Furthermore, using target either `master-sites-all` or `patch-sites-all` is preferred to directly checking either MASTER\_SITES or PATCH\_SITES. Also, directly checking is not guaranteed to work in any future versions. Check item [B](#) for more information on these new port targets.

iii. New port targets

- A. There are `master-sites-n` and `patch-sites-n` targets which will list the elements of the respective group *n* within MASTER\_SITES and PATCH\_SITES respectively. For instance, both `master-sites-DEFAULT` and `patch-sites-DEFAULT` will return the elements of group DEFAULT, `master-sites-test` and `patch-sites-test` of group test, and thereon.
- B. There are new targets `master-sites-all` and `patch-sites-all` which do the work of the old `master-sites` and `patch-sites` ones. They return the elements of all groups as if they all belonged to the same group with the caveat that it lists as many MASTER\_SITE\_BACKUP and MASTER\_SITE\_OVERRIDE as there are groups defined within either DISTFILES or PATCHFILES; respectively for `master-sites-all` and `patch-sites-all`.

### 5.4.8. DIST\_SUBDIR

Do not let your port clutter `/usr/ports/distfiles`. If your port requires a lot of files to be fetched, or contains a file that has a name that might conflict with other ports (e.g., Makefile), set DIST\_SUBDIR to the name of the port (`${PORTNAME}` or `${PKGNAMEPREFIX}${PORTNAME}` should work fine). This will change DISTDIR from the default `/usr/ports/distfiles` to `/usr/ports/distfiles/DIST_SUBDIR`, and in effect puts everything that is required for your port into that subdirectory.

It will also look at the subdirectory with the same name on the backup master site at `ftp.FreeBSD.org` . (Setting `DISTDIR` explicitly in your `Makefile` will not accomplish this, so please use `DIST_SUBDIR` .)



### Note

This does not affect the `MASTER_SITES` you define in your `Makefile`.

#### 5.4.9. ALWAYS\_KEEP\_DISTFILES

If your port uses binary distfiles and has a license that requires that the source code is provided with packages distributed in binary form, e.g., GPL, `ALWAYS_KEEP_DISTFILES` will instruct the FreeBSD build cluster to keep a copy of the files specified in `DISTFILES`. Users of these ports will generally not need these files, so it is a good idea to only add the source distfiles to `DISTFILES` when `PACKAGE_BUILDING` is defined.

#### Example 5.9. Use of `ALWAYS_KEEP_DISTFILES`

```
.if defined(PACKAGE_BUILDING)
DISTFILES+=  foo.tar.gz
ALWAYS_KEEP_DISTFILES= yes
.endif
```

When adding extra files to `DISTFILES`, make sure you also add them to `distinfo`. Also, the additional files will normally be extracted into `WRKDIR` as well, which for some ports may lead to undesirable side effects and require special handling.

### 5.5. MAINTAINER

Set your mail-address here. Please. :-)

Only a single address without the comment part is allowed as a `MAINTAINER` value. The format used is `user@hostname.domain` . Please do not include any descriptive text such as a real name in this entry. That merely confuses the Ports infrastructure and most tools using it.

The maintainer is responsible for keeping the port up to date and making sure that it works correctly. For a detailed description of the responsibilities of a port maintainer, refer to [The challenge for port maintainers](#).



## Note

A maintainer volunteers to keep a port in good working order. Maintainers have the primary responsibility for their ports, but not exclusive ownership. Ports exist for the benefit of the community and, in reality, belong to the community. What this means is that people other than the maintainer can make changes to a port. Large changes to the Ports Collection might require changes to many ports. The FreeBSD Ports Management Team or members of other teams might modify ports to fix dependency issues or other problems, like a version bump for a shared library update.

Some types of fixes have “blanket approval” from the Ports Management Team <[portmgr@FreeBSD.org](mailto:portmgr@FreeBSD.org)>, allowing any committer to fix those categories of problems on any port. These fixes do not need approval from the maintainer. Blanket approval does not apply to ports that are maintained by teams like <[autotools@FreeBSD.org](mailto:autotools@FreeBSD.org)>, <[x11@FreeBSD.org](mailto:x11@FreeBSD.org)>, <[gnome@FreeBSD.org](mailto:gnome@FreeBSD.org)>, or <[kde@FreeBSD.org](mailto:kde@FreeBSD.org)>. These teams use external repositories and can have work that would conflict with changes that would normally fall under blanket approval.

Blanket approval for most ports applies to these types of fixes:

- Most infrastructure changes to a port (that is, modernizing, but not changing the functionality). For example, converting to staging, `USE_GMAKE` to `USES=gmake`, the new `LIB_DEPENDS` format...
- Trivial and *tested* build fixes.

Other changes to the port will be sent to the maintainer for review and approval before being committed. If the maintainer does not respond to an update request after two weeks (excluding major public holidays), then that is considered a maintainer timeout, and the update may be made without explicit maintainer approval. If the maintainer does not respond within three months, then that maintainer is considered absent without leave, and can be replaced as the maintainer of the particular port in question. Exceptions to this are anything maintained by the Ports Management Team <[portmgr@FreeBSD.org](mailto:portmgr@FreeBSD.org)>, or the Security Officer Team <[security-officer@FreeBSD.org](mailto:security-officer@FreeBSD.org)>. No unauthorized commits may ever be made to ports maintained by those groups.

We reserve the right to modify the maintainer's submission to better match existing policies and style of the Ports Collection without explicit blessing from the submitter or the

maintainer. Also, large infrastructural changes can result in a port being modified without the maintainer's consent. These kinds of changes will never affect the port's functionality.

The Ports Management Team <[portmgr@FreeBSD.org](mailto:portmgr@FreeBSD.org)> reserves the right to revoke or override anyone's maintainership for any reason, and the Security Officer Team <[security-officer@FreeBSD.org](mailto:security-officer@FreeBSD.org)> reserves the right to revoke or override maintainership for security reasons.

## 5.6. COMMENT

This is a one-line description of the port. Please respect the following rules:

1. Try to keep the COMMENT value at no longer than 70 characters, as this line will be used by `pkg info` (see [pkg-info\(8\)](#)) to display a one-line summary of the port;
2. Do *not* include the package name (or version number of the software);
3. The comment should begin with a capital and end without a period;
4. Do not start with an indefinite article (i.e., A or An);
5. Names are capitalized (for example, Apache, JavaScript, Perl);
6. For lists of words, use the Oxford comma (e.g., green, red, and blue);
7. Spell check the text.

Here is an example:

```
COMMENT= Cat chasing a mouse all over the screen
```

The COMMENT variable should immediately follow the MAINTAINER variable in the Makefile.

## 5.7. PORTSCOUT

Portscout is an automated distfile check utility for the FreeBSD Ports Collection, described in detail in [Section 14.5, “Portscout: the FreeBSD Ports Distfile Scanner”](#).

The PORTSCOUT variable defines special conditions within which the Portscout distfile scanner should be restricted.

Situations where the PORTSCOUT variable should be set include:

- When distfiles should be ignored, whether for specific versions, or specific minor revisions. For example, to exclude version 8.2 from distfile version checks because it is known to be broken, add:

```
PORTSCOUT= ignore:8.2
```

- When specific versions or specific major and minor revisions of a distfile should be checked. For example, if only version 0.6.4 should be monitored because newer versions have compatibility issues with FreeBSD, add:

```
PORTSCOUT= limit:^0\.6\.4
```

- When URLs listing the available versions differ from the download URLs. For example, to limit distfile version checks to the download page for the [databases/pgtune](#) port, add:

```
PORTSCOUT= site:http://pgfoundry.org/frs/?group_id=1000416
```

## 5.8. Dependencies

Many ports depend on other ports. This is a very convenient feature of most Unix-like operating systems, including FreeBSD. Multiple ports can share a common dependency, rather than bundling that dependency with every port or package that needs it. There are seven variables that can be used to ensure that all the required bits will be on the user's machine. There are also some pre-supported dependency variables for common cases, plus a few more to control the behavior of dependencies.

### 5.8.1. LIB\_DEPENDS

This variable specifies the shared libraries this port depends on. It is a list of *lib:dir* tuples where *lib* is the name of the shared library, *dir* is the directory in which to find it in case it is not available. For example,

```
LIB_DEPENDS= libjpeg.so:${PORTSDIR}/graphics/jpeg
```

will check for a shared jpeg library with any version, and descend into the `graphics/jpeg` subdirectory of your ports tree to build and install it if it is not found.

The dependency is checked twice, once from within the `build` target and then from within the `install` target. Also, the name of the dependency is put into the package so that `pkg install` (see [pkg-install\(8\)](#)) will automatically install it if it is not on the user's system.

### 5.8.2. RUN\_DEPENDS

This variable specifies executables or files this port depends on during run-time. It is a list of *path:dir[:target]* tuples where *path* is the name of the executable or file, *dir* is

the directory in which to find it in case it is not available, and *target* is the target to call in that directory. If *path* starts with a slash (/), it is treated as a file and its existence is tested with `test -e`; otherwise, it is assumed to be an executable, and `which -s` is used to determine if the program exists in the search path.

For example,

```
RUN_DEPENDS= ${LOCALBASE}/news/bin/innd:${PORTSDIR}/news/inn \
xmlcatmgr:${PORTSDIR}/textproc/xmlcatmgr
```

will check if the file or directory `/usr/local/news/bin/innd` exists, and build and install it from the `news/inn` subdirectory of the ports tree if it is not found. It will also see if an executable called `xmlcatmgr` is in the search path, and descend into the `textproc/xmlcatmgr` subdirectory of your ports tree to build and install it if it is not found.



### Note

In this case, `innd` is actually an executable; if an executable is in a place that is not expected to be in the search path, you should use the full pathname.



### Note

The official search PATH used on the ports build cluster is

```
/sbin:/bin:/usr/sbin:/usr/bin:/usr/local/sbin:/usr/
local/bin
```

The dependency is checked from within the `install` target. Also, the name of the dependency is put into the package so that `pkg install` (see [pkg-install\(8\)](#)) will automatically install it if it is not on the user's system. The *target* part can be omitted if it is the same as `DEPENDS_TARGET`.

A quite common situation is when `RUN_DEPENDS` is literally the same as `BUILD_DEPENDS`, especially if ported software is written in a scripted language or if it requires the same build and run-time environment. In this case, it is both tempting and intuitive to directly assign one to the other:

```
RUN_DEPENDS= ${BUILD_DEPENDS}
```

However, such assignment can pollute run-time dependencies with entries not defined in the port's original `BUILD_DEPENDS`. This happens because of [make\(1\)](#)'s lazy evaluation of

variable assignment. Consider a Makefile with `USE_*` variables, which are processed by `ports/Mk/bsd.*.mk` to augment initial build dependencies. For example, `USES= gmake` adds `devel/gmake` to `BUILD_DEPENDS`. To prevent such additional dependencies from polluting `RUN_DEPENDS`, take care to assign with expansion, i.e., expand the value before assigning it to the variable:

```
RUN_DEPENDS:= ${BUILD_DEPENDS}
```

### 5.8.3. BUILD\_DEPENDS

This variable specifies executables or files this port requires to build. Like `RUN_DEPENDS`, it is a list of `path:dir[:target]` tuples. For example,

```
BUILD_DEPENDS= unzip:${PORTSDIR}/archivers/unzip
```

will check for an executable called `unzip`, and descend into the `archivers/unzip` subdirectory of your ports tree to build and install it if it is not found.



#### Note

“build” here means everything from extraction to compilation. The dependency is checked from within the `extract` target. The *target* part can be omitted if it is the same as `DEPENDS_TARGET`.

### 5.8.4. FETCH\_DEPENDS

This variable specifies executables or files this port requires to fetch. Like the previous two, it is a list of `path:dir[:target]` tuples. For example,

```
FETCH_DEPENDS= ncftp2:${PORTSDIR}/net/ncftp2
```

will check for an executable called `ncftp2`, and descend into the `net/ncftp2` subdirectory of your ports tree to build and install it if it is not found.

The dependency is checked from within the `fetch` target. The *target* part can be omitted if it is the same as `DEPENDS_TARGET`.

### 5.8.5. EXTRACT\_DEPENDS

This variable specifies executables or files this port requires for extraction. Like the previous, it is a list of `path:dir[:target]` tuples. For example,

```
EXTRACT_DEPENDS= unzip:${PORTSDIR}/archivers/unzip
```

will check for an executable called `unzip`, and descend into the `archivers/unzip` subdirectory of your ports tree to build and install it if it is not found.

The dependency is checked from within the `extract` target. The *target* part can be omitted if it is the same as `DEPENDS_TARGET` .



### Note

Use this variable only if the extraction does not already work (the default assumes `tar`) and cannot be made to work using `USES=tar` , `USES=lha` or `USES=zip` described in [Chapter 15, Values of USES](#) .

## 5.8.6. PATCH\_DEPENDS

This variable specifies executables or files this port requires to patch. Like the previous, it is a list of `path:dir[:target]` tuples. For example,

```
PATCH_DEPENDS= ${NONEXISTENT}:${PORTSDIR}/java/jfc:extract
```

will descend into the `java/jfc` subdirectory of your ports tree to extract it.

The dependency is checked from within the `patch` target. The *target* part can be omitted if it is the same as `DEPENDS_TARGET` .

## 5.8.7. USES

Parameters can be added to define different features and dependencies used by the port. They are specified by adding this line to the `Makefile`:

```
USES= feature[:arguments]
```

For the complete list of values, please see [Chapter 15, Values of USES](#) .



### Warning

`USES` cannot be assigned after inclusion of `bsd.port.pre.mk` .

## 5.8.8. USE\_\*

Several variables exist to define common dependencies shared by many ports. Their use is optional, but helps to reduce the verbosity of the port `Makefiles`. Each of them is styled as `USE_*`. These variables may be used only in the port `Makefiles` and `ports/Mk/bsd.*.mk` . They are not meant for user-settable options — use `PORT_OPTIONS` for that purpose.





## Note

It is *always* incorrect to set any `USE_*` in `/etc/make.conf`. For instance, setting

```
USE_GCC=X.Y
```

(where `X.Y` is version number) would add a dependency on `gccXY` for every port, including `lang/gccXY` itself!

Table 5.3. The `USE_*` Variables

Variable	Means
<code>USE_GCC</code>	The port requires GCC ( <code>gcc</code> or <code>g++</code> ) to build. Some ports need any GCC version, some require modern, recent versions. It is typically set to <code>any</code> (in this case, GCC from base would be used on versions of FreeBSD that still have it, or <code>lang/gcc</code> port would be installed when default C/C++ compiler is Clang); or <code>yes</code> (means always use stable, modern GCC from <code>lang/gcc</code> port). The exact version can also be specified, with a value such as <code>4.7</code> . The minimal required version can be specified as <code>4.6+</code> . The GCC from the base system is used when it satisfies the requested version, otherwise an appropriate compiler is built from the port, and the <code>CC</code> and <code>CXX</code> variables are adjusted accordingly.

Variables related to `gmake` and the `configure` script are described in [Section 6.5, “Building Mechanisms”](#), while `autoconf`, `automake` and `libtool` are described in [Section 6.6, “Using GNU Autotools”](#). Perl related variables are described in [Section 6.8, “Using Perl”](#). X11 variables are listed in [Section 6.9, “Using X11”](#). [Section 6.10, “Using GNOME”](#) deals with GNOME and [Section 6.12, “Using KDE”](#) with KDE related variables. [Section 6.13, “Using Java”](#) documents Java variables, while [Section 6.14, “Web Applications, Apache and PHP”](#) contains information on Apache, PHP and PEAR modules. Python is discussed in [Section 6.15, “Using Python”](#), while Ruby in [Section 6.18, “Using Ruby”](#). [Section 6.19, “Using SDL”](#) provides variables used for SDL applications and finally, [Section 6.23, “Using Xfce”](#) contains information on Xfce.

## 5.8.9. Minimal Version of a Dependency

A minimal version of a dependency can be specified in any `*_DEPENDS` variable except `LIB_DEPENDS` using the following syntax:

```
p5-Spiffy>=0.26:${PORTSDIR}/devel/p5-Spiffy
```

The first field contains a dependent package name, which must match the entry in the package database, a comparison sign, and a package version. The dependency is satisfied if `p5-Spiffy-0.26` or newer is installed on the machine.

## 5.8.10. Notes on Dependencies

As mentioned above, the default target to call when a dependency is required is `DEPENDS_TARGET`. It defaults to `install`. This is a user variable; it is never defined in a port's `Makefile`. If your port needs a special way to handle a dependency, use the `:target` part of the `*_DEPENDS` variables instead of redefining `DEPENDS_TARGET`.

When you type `make clean`, its dependencies are automatically cleaned too. If you do not wish this to happen, define the variable `NOCLEANDEPENDS` in your environment. This may be particularly desirable if the port has something that takes a long time to rebuild in its dependency list, such as KDE, GNOME or Mozilla.

To depend on another port unconditionally, use the variable `${NONEXISTENT}` as the first field of `BUILD_DEPENDS` or `RUN_DEPENDS`. Use this only when you need to get the source of the other port. You can often save compilation time by specifying the target too. For instance

```
BUILD_DEPENDS= ${NONEXISTENT}:${PORTSDIR}/graphics/jpeg:extract
```

will always descend to the `jpeg` port and extract it.

## 5.8.11. Circular Dependencies Are Fatal



### Important

Do not introduce any circular dependencies into the ports tree!

The ports building technology does not tolerate circular dependencies. If you introduce one, you will have someone, somewhere in the world, whose FreeBSD installation will break almost immediately, with many others quickly to follow. These can really be hard to detect; if in doubt, before you make that change, make sure you have done the following: `cd /usr/ports; make index`. That process can be quite slow on older machines, but

you may be able to save a large number of people—including yourself— a lot of grief in the process.

### 5.8.12. Problems Caused by Automatic Dependencies

Dependencies must be declared either explicitly or by using the [OPTIONS framework](#). Using other methods like automatic detection complicates indexing, which causes problems for port and package management.

#### Example 5.10. Wrong Declaration of an Optional Dependency

```
.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if exists(${LOCALBASE}/bin/foo)
LIB_DEPENDS= libbar.so:${PORTSDIR}/foo/bar
.endif
```

The problem with trying to automatically add dependencies is that files and settings outside an individual port can change at any time. For example: an index is built, then a batch of ports are installed. But one of the ports installs the tested file. The index is now incorrect, because an installed port unexpectedly has a new dependency. The index may still be wrong even after rebuilding if other ports also determine their need for dependencies based on the existence of other files.

#### Example 5.11. Correct Declaration of an Optional Dependency

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= BAR
BAR_DESC= Calling cellphones via bar

BAR_LIB_DEPENDS= libbar.so:${PORTSDIR}/foo/bar
```

Testing option variables is the correct method. It will not cause inconsistencies in the index of a batch of ports, provided the options were defined prior to the index build. Simple scripts can then be used to automate the building, installation, and updating of these ports and their packages.

### 5.8.13. USE\_ and WANT\_

USE\_ variables are set by the port maintainer to define software on which this port depends. A port that needs Firefox would set

```
USE_FIREFOX= yes
```

Some USE\_ variables can accept version numbers or other parameters. For example, a port that requires Apache 2.2 would set

```
USE_APACHE= 22
```

For more control over dependencies in some cases, WANT\_ variables are available to more precisely specify what is needed. For example, consider the [mail/squirrelmail](#) port. This port needs some PHP modules, which are listed in the USE\_PHP variable:

```
USE_PHP= session mhash gettext mbstring pcre openssl xml
```

Those modules may be available in CLI or web versions, so the web version is selected with a WANT\_ variable:

```
WANT_PHP_WEB= yes
```

Available USE\_ and WANT\_ variables are defined in the files in /usr/ports/Mk .

## 5.9. MASTERDIR

If your port needs to build slightly different versions of packages by having a variable (for instance, resolution, or paper size) take different values, create one subdirectory per package to make it easier for users to see what to do, but try to share as many files as possible between ports. Typically you only need a very short Makefile in all but one of the directories if you use variables cleverly. In the sole Makefile, you can use MASTERDIR to specify the directory where the rest of the files are. Also, use a variable as part of PKG-NAMESUFFIX so the packages will have different names.

This will be best demonstrated by an example. This is part of `japanese/xdvi300/Makefile`;

```
PORTNAME= xdvi
PORTVERSION= 17
PKGNAMEPREFIX= ja-
PKGNAME_SUFFIX= ${RESOLUTION}
:
# default
RESOLUTION?= 300
.if ${RESOLUTION} != 118 && ${RESOLUTION} != 240 && \
  ${RESOLUTION} != 300 && ${RESOLUTION} != 400
  @${ECHO_MSG} "Error: invalid value for RESOLUTION: 𐀀"
  \ "${RESOLUTION}"
  @${ECHO_MSG} "Possible values are: 118, 240, 300 (default) and 400."
```

```
@${FALSE}  
.endif
```

[japanese/xdvi300](#) also has all the regular patches, package files, etc. If you type `make` there, it will take the default value for the resolution (300) and build the port normally.

As for other resolutions, this is the *entire* `xdvi118/Makefile`:

```
RESOLUTION= 118  
MASTERDIR= ${.CURDIR}/../xdvi300  
  
.include "${MASTERDIR}/Makefile"
```

(`xdvi240/Makefile` and `xdvi400/Makefile` are similar). The `MASTERDIR` definition tells `bsd.port.mk` that the regular set of subdirectories like `FILESDIR` and `SCRIPTDIR` are to be found under `xdvi300`. The `RESOLUTION=118` line will override the `RESOLUTION=300` line in `xdvi300/Makefile` and the port will be built with resolution set to 118.

## 5.10. Man Pages

If your port anchors its man tree somewhere other than `PREFIX`, you can use `MANDIRS` to specify those directories. Note that the files corresponding to manual pages should be placed in `pkg-plist` along with the rest of the files. The purpose of `MANDIRS` is to enable automatic compression of manual pages, therefore the file names should be suffixed with `.gz`.

## 5.11. Info Files

If your package needs to install GNU info files, they should be listed in the `INFO` variable (without the trailing `.info`), one entry per document. These files are assumed to be installed to `PREFIX/INFO_PATH`. You can change `INFO_PATH` if your package uses a different location. However, this is not recommended. These entries contain just the path relative to `PREFIX/INFO_PATH`. For example, [lang/gcc34](#) installs info files to `PREFIX/INFO_PATH/gcc34`, and `INFO` will be something like this:

```
INFO= gcc34/cpp gcc34/cppinternals gcc34/g77 ...
```

Appropriate installation/de-installation code will be automatically added to the temporary `pkg-plist` before package registration.

## 5.12. Makefile Options

Many applications can be built with optional or differing configurations. Examples include choice of natural (human) language, GUI versus command-line, or type of database

to support. Users may need a different configuration than the default, so the ports system provides hooks the port author can use to control which variant will be built. Supporting these options properly will make users happy, and effectively provide two or more ports for the price of one.

## 5.12.1. OPTIONS

### 5.12.1.1. Background

The `OPTIONS_*` variables give the user installing the port a dialog showing the available options, and then saves those options to `/var/db/ports/${UNIQUENAME}/options`. The next time the port is built, the options are reused.

When the user runs `make config` (or runs `make build` for the first time), the framework checks for `/var/db/ports/${UNIQUENAME}/options`. If that file does not exist, the values of `OPTIONS_*` are used, and a dialog box is displayed where the options can be enabled or disabled. Then the options file is saved and the configured variables are used when building the port.

If a new version of the port adds new `OPTIONS`, the dialog will be presented to the user with the saved values of old `OPTIONS` prefilled.

`make showconfig` shows the saved configuration. Use `make rmconfig` to remove the saved configuration.

### 5.12.1.2. Syntax

`OPTIONS_DEFINE` contains a list of `OPTIONS` to be used. These are independent of each other and are not grouped:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1 OPT2
```

Once defined, `OPTIONS` are described (optional, but strongly recommended):

```
OPT1_DESC= Describe OPT1
OPT2_DESC= Describe OPT2
OPT3_DESC= Describe OPT3
OPT4_DESC= Describe OPT4
OPT5_DESC= Describe OPT5
OPT6_DESC= Describe OPT6
```

`ports/Mk/bsd.options.desc.mk` has descriptions for many common `OPTIONS`. While often useful, they should be overridden if the description is insufficient for the port.



#### Tip

When describing options, view it from the perspective of the user: “What functionality does it change?” and “Why would I want to en-

able this?” Do not just repeat the name. For example, describing the NLS option as “include NLS support” does not help the user, who can already see the option name but may not know what it means. Describing it as “Native Language Support via gettext utilities” is much more helpful.



### Note

Option names should always be in all uppercase. They should not use mixed case or lowercase.

OPTIONS can be grouped as radio choices, where only one choice from each group is allowed:

```
OPTIONS_SINGLE= SG1
OPTIONS_SINGLE_SG1= OPT3 OPT4
```

OPTIONS can be grouped as radio choices, where none or only one choice from each group is allowed:

```
OPTIONS_RADIO= RG1
OPTIONS_RADIO_RG1= OPT7 OPT8
```

OPTIONS can also be grouped as “multiple-choice” lists, where *at least one* option must be enabled:

```
OPTIONS_MULTI= MG1
OPTIONS_MULTI_MG1= OPT5 OPT6
```

OPTIONS can also be grouped as “multiple-choice” lists, where none or any option can be enabled:

```
OPTIONS_GROUP= GG1
OPTIONS_GROUP_GG1= OPT9 OPT10
```

OPTIONS are unset by default, unless they are listed in OPTIONS\_DEFAULT :

```
OPTIONS_DEFAULT= OPT1 OPT3 OPT6
```

OPTIONS definitions must appear before the inclusion of `bsd.port.options.mk` . The `PORT_OPTIONS` variable can only be tested after the inclusion of `bsd.port.options.mk` . Inclusion of `bsd.port.pre.mk` can be used instead, too, and is still widely used in ports written before the introduction of `bsd.port.options.mk` . But be aware that some variables will not work as expected after the inclusion of `bsd.port.pre.mk` , typically some `USE_*` flags.

### Example 5.12. Simple Use of **OPTIONS**

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= FOO BAR
FOO_DESC= Option foo support
BAR_DESC= Feature bar support

OPTIONS_DEFAULT=FOO

# Will add --with-foo / --without-foo
FOO_CONFIGURE_WITH= foo
BAR_RUN_DEPENDS= bar:${PORTSDIR}/bar/bar

.include <bsd.port.mk>
```

### Example 5.13. Check for Unset Port **OPTIONS**

```
.if ! ${PORT_OPTIONS:MEXAMPLES}
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=--without-examples
.endif
```

Though, you should use the following so that the configure knob is really enabled and disabled when the option is.

```
# Will add --with-examples / --without-examples
EXAMPLES_CONFIGURE_WITH= examples
```

### Example 5.14. Practical Use of **OPTIONS**

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= EXAMPLES

OPTIONS_SINGLE= BACKEND
OPTIONS_SINGLE_BACKEND= MYSQL PGSQL BDB

OPTIONS_MULTI= AUTH
OPTIONS_MULTI_AUTH= LDAP PAM SSL

EXAMPLES_DESC= Install extra examples
MYSQL_DESC= Use MySQL as backend
```



```
PGSQL_DESC= Use PostgreSQL as backend
BDB_DESC= Use Berkeley DB as backend
LDAP_DESC= Build with LDAP authentication support
PAM_DESC= Build with PAM support
SSL_DESC= Build with OpenSSL support

OPTIONS_DEFAULT= PGSQL LDAP SSL

PGSQL_USE= postgresql=yes
# Will add --enable-postgres / --disable-postgres
PGSQL_CONFIGURE_ENABLE= postgres

ICU_LIB_DEPENDS= libicuuc.so:${PORTSDIR}/devel/icu

# Will add --with-examples / --without-examples
EXAMPLES_CONFIGURE_WITH= examples

# Check other OPTIONS

.include <bsd.port.mk>
```

### 5.12.1.3. Default Options

The following options are always on by default.

- DOCS — build and install documentation.
- NLS — Native Language Support.
- EXAMPLES — build and install examples.
- IPV6 — IPv6 protocol support.



#### Note

There is no need to add these to `OPTIONS_DEFAULT`. To have them active, and show up in the options selection dialog, however, they must be added to `OPTIONS_DEFINE`.

### 5.12.2. Feature Auto-Activation

When using a GNU configure script, keep an eye on which optional features are activated by auto-detection. Explicitly disable optional features you do not wish to be used by passing respective `--without-xxx` or `--disable-xxx` in `CONFIGURE_ARGS`.

### Example 5.15. Wrong Handling of an Option

```
.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MFOO}
LIB_DEPENDS+= libfoo.so:${PORTSDIR}/devel/foo
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --enable-foo
.endif
```

In the example above, imagine a library `libfoo` is installed on the system. The user does not want this application to use `libfoo`, so he toggled the option off in the `make config` dialog. But the application's configure script detects the library present in the system and includes its support in the resulting executable. Now when the user decides to remove `libfoo` from the system, the ports system does not protest (no dependency on `libfoo` was recorded) but the application breaks.

### Example 5.16. Correct Handling of an Option

```
FOO_LIB_DEPENDS= libfoo.so:${PORTSDIR}/devel/foo
# Will add --enable-foo / --disable-foo
FOO_CONFIGURE_ENABLE= foo
```



#### Note

Under some circumstances, the shorthand conditional syntax can cause problems with complex constructs. If you receive errors such as `Malformed conditional`, an alternative syntax can be used.

```
.if !empty(VARIABLE:MVALUE)
# as an alternative to
.if ${VARIABLE:MVALUE}
```

### 5.12.3. Options Helpers

There are some macros to help simplify conditional values which differ based on the options set.

### 5.12.3.1. OPTIONS\_SUB

If `OPTIONS_SUB` is set to `yes` then each of the options added to `OPTIONS_DEFINE` will be added to `PLIST_SUB` and `SUB_LIST`, for example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPTIONS_SUB= yes
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOPT1}
PLIST_SUB+= OPT1="" NO_OPT1="@comment "
SUB_LIST+= OPT1="" NO_OPT1="@comment "
.else
PLIST_SUB+= OPT1="@comment " NO_OPT1=""
SUB_LIST+= OPT1="@comment " NO_OPT1=""
.endif
```



#### Note

The value of `OPTIONS_SUB` is ignored. Setting it to any value will add `PLIST_SUB` and `SUB_LIST` entries for *all* options.

### 5.12.3.2. OPT\_USE

For each *key=value* pair in `OPT_USE` the corresponding `USE_KEY` variable will be set to *value*. If *value* has spaces in it, replace them with commas, they will be changed back to spaces during processing. For example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPT1_USE= mysql=yes xorg=x11,xextproto,xext,xrandr
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOPT1}
USE_MYSQL= yes
USE_XORG= x11 xextproto xext xrandr
.endif
```

### 5.12.3.3. *OPT\_CONFIGURE\_ENABLE*

If *OPT\_CONFIGURE\_ENABLE* is set then `--enable-${OPT_CONFIGURE_ENABLE}` or `--disable-${OPT_CONFIGURE_ENABLE}` will be added to `CONFIGURE_ARGS` depending on the value of the option *OPT*, for example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPT1_CONFIGURE_ENABLE= test
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOPT1}
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --enable-test
.else
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --disable-test
.endif
```

### 5.12.3.4. *OPT\_CONFIGURE\_WITH*

If *OPT\_CONFIGURE\_WITH* is set then `--with-${OPT_CONFIGURE_WITH}` or `--without-${OPT_CONFIGURE_WITH}` will be added to `CONFIGURE_ARGS` depending on the status of the option *OPT*. An optional argument can be specified with an `=` symbol. This argument is only appended to the `--with-opt` configure option. For example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1 OPT2
OPT1_CONFIGURE_WITH= test1
OPT1_CONFIGURE_WITH= test2=exhaustive
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1 OPT2

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOPT1}
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --with-test1
.else
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --without-test1
.endif

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOPT2}
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --with-test2=exhaustive
.else
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --without-test2
.endif
```

### 5.12.3.5. *OPT\_CONFIGURE\_ON*

If *OPT\_CONFIGURE\_ON* is set then its value will be appended to *CONFIGURE\_ARGS* depending on the status of the option *OPT*, for example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPT1_CONFIGURE_ON= --add-test
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOPT1}
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --add-test
.endif
```

### 5.12.3.6. *OPT\_CONFIGURE\_OFF*

If *OPT\_CONFIGURE\_OFF* is set then its value will be appended to *CONFIGURE\_ARGS* depending on the status of the option *OPT*, for example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPT1_CONFIGURE_OFF= --no-test
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ! ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOPT1}
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --no-test
.endif
```

### 5.12.3.7. *OPT\_CMAKE\_ON*

If *OPT\_CMAKE\_ON* is set then its value will be appended to *CMAKE\_ARGS* depending on the status of the option *OPT*, for example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPT1_CMAKE_ON= -DTEST:BOOL=true
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOPT1}
CMAKE_ARGS+= -DTEST:BOOL=true
.endif
```

#### 5.12.3.8. *OPT\_CMAKE\_OFF*

If *OPT\_CMAKE\_OFF* is set then its value will be appended to *CMAKE\_ARGS* depending on the status of the option *OPT*, for example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPT1_CMAKE_OFF= -DTEST:BOOL=false
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ! ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOP1}
CMAKE_ARGS+= -DTEST:BOOL=false
.endif
```

#### 5.12.3.9. Dependencies

For any of the following dependency type:

- *PKG\_DEPENDS*
- *EXTRACT\_DEPENDS*
- *PATCH\_DEPENDS*
- *FETCH\_DEPENDS*
- *BUILD\_DEPENDS*
- *LIB\_DEPENDS*
- *RUN\_DEPENDS*

##### 5.12.3.9.1. *OPT\_ABOVEVARIABLE*

If *OPT\_ABOVEVARIABLE* is defined then its value will be appended to *ABOVEVARIABLE* depending on the status of the option *OPT*, for example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPT1_LIB_DEPENDS= liba.so:${PORTSDIR}/devel/a
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOP1}
LIB_DEPENDS+= liba.so:${PORTSDIR}/devel/a
.endif
```

```
.endif
```

#### 5.12.3.9.2. *OPT\_ABOVEVARIABLE* \_OFF

If *OPT\_ABOVEVARIABLE* \_OFF is set then a dependency of type *ABOVEVARIABLE* will be added when option *OPT* is not selected. For example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPT1_LIB_DEPENDS_OFF= liba.so:${PORTSDIR}/devel/a
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

. if ! ${PORT_OPTIONS:MOPT1}
LIB_DEPENDS+= liba.so:${PORTSDIR}/devel/a
.endif
```

#### 5.12.3.10. Generic Variables Replacement

For any of the following variables:

- ALL\_TARGET
- CATEGORIES
- CFLAGS
- CPPFLAGS
- CXXFLAGS
- CONFIGURE\_ENV
- CONFLICTS
- CONFLICTS\_BUILD
- CONFLICTS\_INSTALL
- DISTFILES
- EXTRA\_PATCHES
- INFO
- INSTALL\_TARGET
- LDFLAGS

- MAKE\_ARGS
- MAKE\_ENV
- PATCH\_SITES
- PATCHFILES
- PLIST\_FILES
- PLIST\_DIRS
- PLIST\_DIRSTRY
- PLIST\_SUB
- USES



## Warning

Some of these variables, at least `ALL_TARGET` and `INSTALL_TARGET` , have their default values set *after* the options are processed.

With the following lines in the Makefile:

```
ALL_TARGET= all
DOCS_ALL_TARGET= doc
```

If the `DOCS` option is enabled, `ALL_TARGET` will have a final value of `all doc`; if the option is disabled, it would have a value of `all`.

With only the options helper line in the Makefile:

```
DOCS_ALL_TARGET= doc
```

If the `DOCS` option is enabled, `ALL_TARGET` will have a final value of `doc`; if the option is disabled, it would have a value of `all`.

### 5.12.3.10.1. `OPT_ABOVEVARIABLE`

If `OPT_ABOVEVARIABLE` is defined then its value will be appended to `ABOVEVARIABLE` depending on the status of the option `OPT`, for example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPT1_USES= gmake
OPT1_CFLAGS= -DTEST
```



is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MLOPT1}
USES+=  gmake
CFLAGS+= -DTEST
.endif
```

### 5.12.3.10.2. *OPT\_ABOVEVARIABLE* \_OFF

If *OPT\_ABOVEVARIABLE* \_OFF is set then a flag *ABOVEVARIABLE* will be automatically set when option *OPT* is not selected. For example:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1
OPT1_USES_OFF=gmake
```

is equivalent to:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ! ${PORT_OPTIONS:MLOPT1}
USES+=  gmake
.endif
```

## 5.13. Specifying the Working Directory

Each port is extracted in to a working directory, which must be writable. The ports system defaults to having the DISTFILES unpack in to a directory called \${DISTNAME}. In other words, if you have set:

```
PORTNAME= foo
PORTVERSION= 1.0
```

then the port's distribution files contain a top-level directory, foo-1.0, and the rest of the files are located under that directory.

There are a number of variables you can override if that is not the case.

### 5.13.1. WRKSRCDIR

The variable lists the name of the directory that is created when the application's distfiles are extracted. If our previous example extracted into a directory called foo (and not foo-1.0) you would write:

```
WRKSRCDIR= ${WRKDIR}/foo
```

or possibly

```
WRKSRC= ${WRKDIR}/${PORTNAME}
```

### 5.13.2. NO\_WRKSUBDIR

If the port does not extract in to a subdirectory at all then you should set NO\_WRKSUBDIR to indicate that.

```
NO_WRKSUBDIR= yes
```

## 5.14. Conflict Handling

There are three different variables to register a conflict between packages and ports: CONFLICTS, CONFLICTS\_INSTALL and CONFLICTS\_BUILD .



### Note

The conflict variables automatically set the variable IGNORE, which is more fully documented in [Section 12.14, “Marking a Port Not Installable with BROKEN, FORBIDDEN, or IGNORE”](#).

When removing one of several conflicting ports, it is advisable to retain the CONFLICTS entries in those other ports for a few months to cater for users who only update once in a while.

### 5.14.1. CONFLICTS\_INSTALL

If your package cannot coexist with other packages (because of file conflicts, runtime incompatibilities, etc.), list the other package names in the CONFLICTS\_INSTALL variable. You can use shell globs like \* and ? here. Package names should be enumerated the same way they appear in /var/db/pkg . Please make sure that CONFLICTS\_INSTALL does not match this port's package itself. Otherwise enforcing its installation with FORCE\_PKG\_REGISTER will no longer work. The CONFLICTS\_INSTALL check is done after the build stage and prior to the install stage.

### 5.14.2. CONFLICTS\_BUILD

If your port cannot be built if a certain port is already installed, list the other port names in the CONFLICTS\_BUILD variable. You can use shell globs like \* and ? here. Package names should be enumerated the same way they appear in /var/db/pkg . The CONFLICTS\_BUILD check is done prior to the build stage. Build conflicts are not recorded in the resulting package.

### 5.14.3. CONFLICTS

If your port cannot be built if a certain port is already installed and the resulting package cannot coexist with the other package, list the other package name in the `CONFLICTS` variable. You can use shell globs like `*` and `?` here. Packages names should be enumerated the same way they appear in `/var/db/pkg`. Please make sure that `CONFLICTS_INSTALL` does not match this port's package itself. Otherwise enforcing its installation with `FORCE_PKG_REGISTER` will no longer work. The `CONFLICTS` check is done prior to the build stage and prior to the install stage.

## 5.15. Installing Files

### 5.15.1. INSTALL\_\* Macros

Use the macros provided in `bsd.port.mk` to ensure correct modes of files in the port's `*-install` targets. Set ownership directly in `pkg-plist` with the corresponding entries, such as `@owner owner` and `@group group`. These operators work until being overridden, or until the end of `pkg-plist`, so do not forget to reset them after they are no longer needed. The default ownership is `root:wheel`.

- `INSTALL_PROGRAM` is a command to install binary executables.
- `INSTALL_SCRIPT` is a command to install executable scripts.
- `INSTALL_LIB` is a command to install shared libraries (but not static libraries).
- `INSTALL_KLD` is a command to install kernel loadable modules. Some architectures do not like having the modules stripped, so use this command instead of `INSTALL_PROGRAM`.
- `INSTALL_DATA` is a command to install sharable data, including static libraries.
- `INSTALL_MAN` is a command to install manpages and other documentation (it does not compress anything).

These are basically the `install` command with all the appropriate flags.



#### Note

Do not use `INSTALL_LIB` to install static libraries, because stripping them render them useless. Use `INSTALL_DATA` instead.

### 5.15.2. Stripping Binaries and Shared Libraries

Do not strip binaries manually unless you have to. All binaries should be stripped, but the `INSTALL_PROGRAM` macro will install and strip a binary at the same time (see the next section). The `INSTALL_LIB` macro does the same thing to shared libraries.

If you need to strip a file, but wish to use neither `INSTALL_PROGRAM` nor `INSTALL_LIB` macros, `${STRIP_CMD}` will strip your program or shared library. This is typically done within the `post-install` target. For example:

```
post-install:
    ${STRIP_CMD} ${STAGEDIR}${PREFIX}/bin/xdl
```

When multiple files need to be stripped:

```
post-install:
    .for l in geometry media body track world
    ${STRIP_CMD} ${STAGEDIR}${PREFIX}/lib/lib${PORTNAME}-${l}.so.0
    .endfor
```

Use `file(1)` on a file to determine if it has been stripped. Binaries are reported by `file(1)` as `stripped`, or not `stripped`. Additionally, `strip(1)` will detect programs that have already been stripped and exit cleanly.

### 5.15.3. Installing a Whole Tree of Files

Sometimes, a large number of files must be installed while preserving their hierarchical organization. For example, copying over a whole directory tree from `WRKSR` to a target directory under `PREFIX`. Note that `PREFIX`, `EXAMPLESDIR`, `DATADIR`, and other path variables must always be prepended with `STAGEDIR` to respect staging (see [Section 6.1](#), “Staging”).

Two macros exist for this situation. The advantage of using these macros instead of `cp` is that they guarantee proper file ownership and permissions on target files. The first macro, `COPYTREE_BIN`, will set all the installed files to be executable, thus being suitable for installing into `PREFIX/bin`. The second macro, `COPYTREE_SHARE`, does not set executable permissions on files, and is therefore suitable for installing files under `PREFIX/share` target.

```
post-install:
    ${MKDIR} ${STAGEDIR}${EXAMPLESDIR}
    (cd ${WRKSR}/examples && ${COPYTREE_SHARE} . &
    ${STAGEDIR}${EXAMPLESDIR})
```

This example will install the contents of `examples` directory in the vendor distfile to the proper `examples` location of your port.

```
post-install:
```

```
{MKDIR} ${STAGEDIR}${DATADIR}/summer
(cd ${WRKSRC}/temperatures && ${COPYTREE_SHARE} "June July &
August" ${STAGEDIR}${DATADIR}/summer)
```

And this example will install the data of summer months to the summer subdirectory of a DATADIR.

Additional find arguments can be passed via the third argument to the COPYTREE\_\* macros. For example, to install all files from the first example except Makefiles, one can use the following command.

```
post-install:
    {MKDIR} ${STAGEDIR}${EXAMPLESDIR}
    (cd ${WRKSRC}/examples && \
    ${COPYTREE_SHARE} . ${STAGEDIR}${EXAMPLESDIR} "! -name Makefile")
```

These macros do not add the installed files to pkg-plist. They must be added manually. For optional documentation (PORTDOCS, see [Section 5.15.4, “Install Additional Documentation”](#)) and examples (PORTEXTAMPLES), the %%PORTDOCS%% or %%PORTEXTAMPLES%% prefixes must be prepended in pkg-plist.

### 5.15.4. Install Additional Documentation

If your software has some documentation other than the standard man and info pages that you think is useful for the user, install it under PREFIX/share/doc. This can be done, like the previous item, in the post-install target.

Create a new directory for your port. The directory name should reflect what the port is. This usually means PORTNAME. However, if you think the user might want different versions of the port to be installed at the same time, you can use the whole PKGNAME.

Since only the files listed in pkg-plist are installed, it is safe to always install documentation to STAGEDIR (see [Section 6.1, “Staging”](#)). Hence .if blocks are only needed when the installed files are large enough to cause significant I/O overhead.

```
post-install:
    {MKDIR} ${STAGEDIR}${DOCSDIR}
    ${INSTALL_MAN} ${WRKSRC}/docs/xvdocs.ps ${STAGEDIR}${DOCSDIR}
```

Here are some handy variables and how they are expanded by default when used in the Makefile:

- DATADIR gets expanded to PREFIX/share/PORTNAME.
- DATADIR\_REL gets expanded to share/PORTNAME.
- DOCSDIR gets expanded to PREFIX/share/doc/PORTNAME.

- `DOCSDIR_REL` gets expanded to `share/doc/PORTNAME` .
- `EXAMPLESDIR` gets expanded to `PREFIX/share/examples/PORTNAME` .
- `EXAMPLESDIR_REL` gets expanded to `share/examples/PORTNAME` .



### Note

The `DOCS` option only controls additional documentation installed in `DOCSDIR`. It does not apply to standard man pages and info pages. Things installed in `DATADIR` and `EXAMPLESDIR` are controlled by `DATA` and `EXAMPLES` options, respectively.

These variables are exported to `PLIST_SUB`. Their values will appear there as pathnames relative to `PREFIX` if possible. That is, `share/doc/PORTNAME` will be substituted for `%%DOCSDIR%%` in the packing list by default, and so on. (See more on `pkg-plist` substitution [here](#).)

All conditionally installed documentation files and directories should be included in `pkg-plist` with the `%%PORTDOCS%%` prefix, for example:

```
%%PORTDOCS%%%%DOCSDIR%%/AUTHORS
%%PORTDOCS%%%%DOCSDIR%%/CONTACT
%%PORTDOCS%%@dirrm %%DOCSDIR%%
```

As an alternative to enumerating the documentation files in `pkg-plist`, a port can set the variable `PORTDOCS` to a list of file names and shell glob patterns to add to the final packing list. The names will be relative to `DOCSDIR`. Therefore, a port that utilizes `PORTDOCS` and uses a non-default location for its documentation should set `DOCSDIR` accordingly. If a directory is listed in `PORTDOCS` or matched by a glob pattern from this variable, the entire subtree of contained files and directories will be registered in the final packing list. If the `DOCS` option has been unset then files and directories listed in `PORTDOCS` would not be installed or added to port packing list. Installing the documentation at `PORTDOCS` as shown above remains up to the port itself. A typical example of utilizing `PORTDOCS` looks as follows:

```
PORTDOCS= README.* ChangeLog docs/*
```



### Note

The equivalents of `PORTDOCS` for files installed under `DATADIR` and `EXAMPLESDIR` are `PORTDATA` and `PORTEXAMPLES`, respectively.

The contents of `pkg-message` are displayed upon installation. See [the section on using `pkg-message`](#) for details. `pkg-message` does not need to be added to `pkg-plist`.

### 5.15.5. Subdirectories Under `PREFIX`

Try to let the port put things in the right subdirectories of `PREFIX`. Some ports lump everything and put it in the subdirectory with the port's name, which is incorrect. Also, many ports put everything except binaries, header files and manual pages in a subdirectory of `lib`, which does not work well with the BSD paradigm. Many of the files should be moved to one of the following: `etc` (setup/configuration files), `libexec` (executables started internally), `sbin` (executables for superusers/managers), `info` (documentation for info browser) or `share` (architecture independent files). See [hier\(7\)](#) for details; the rules governing `/usr` pretty much apply to `/usr/local` too. The exception are ports dealing with USENET “news”. They may use `PREFIX/news` as a destination for their files.





# Chapter 6. Special Considerations

There are some more things you have to take into account when you create a port. This section explains the most common of those.

## 6.1. Staging

`bsd.port.mk` expects ports to work with a “stage directory”. This means that a port should not install files directly to the regular destination directories (that is, under `PREFIX`, for example) but instead into a separate directory from which the package is then built. In many cases, this does not require root privileges, making it possible to build packages as an unprivileged user. With staging, the port is built and installed into the stage directory, `STAGEDIR`. A package is created from the stage directory and then installed on the system. Automake tools refer to this concept as `DESTDIR`, but in FreeBSD, `DESTDIR` has a different meaning (see [Section 9.4, “PREFIX and DESTDIR”](#)).

When a port still requires system-wide privileges in order to run the stage and package targets, this line must be added to the Makefile:

```
NEED_ROOT= yes
```



### Note

The vast majority of ports do not *really need* to be root. You can mostly avoid it by using `USES=uidfix`, and from time to time by slightly patching the port's Makefiles.

Meta ports, or ports that do not install files themselves but only depend on other ports, should avoid needlessly extracting the `mtree(8)` to the stage directory. This is the basic directory layout of the package, and these empty directories will be seen as orphans. To prevent `mtree(8)` extraction, add this line:

```
NO_MTREE= yes
```

Staging is enabled by prepending the `STAGEDIR` variable to paths used in the `pre-install`, `do-install`, and `post-install` targets (see the examples through the book). Typically, this includes `PREFIX`, `ETCDIR`, `DATADIR`, `EXAMPLESDIR`, `MANPREFIX`, `DOCSDIR`, and so on. Directories should be created as part of the `post-install` target. Avoid using absolute paths whenever possible.

When creating a symlink, `STAGEDIR` should be prepended to the target path only. For example:

```
${LN} -sf libfoo.so.42 ${STAGEDIR}${PREFIX}/lib/libfoo.so
```

The source path `${PREFIX}/lib/libfoo.so.42` looks fine but could, in fact, be incorrect. Absolute paths can point to a wrong location, like when a remote file system has been mounted with NFS under a non-root mount point. Relative paths are less fragile, and often much shorter.

Ports that install kernel modules must prepend the `STAGEDIR` variable to their destination, by default `/boot/modules`.

## 6.2. Bundled Libraries

This section explains why bundled dependencies are considered bad and what to do about them.

### 6.2.1. Why Bundled Libraries Are Bad

Some software requires the porter to locate third-party libraries and add the required dependencies to the port. Other software bundles all necessary libraries into the distribution file. The second approach seems easier at first, but there are some serious drawbacks:

The following list is loosely based on the [Fedora](#) and [Gentoo](#) wikis, both licensed under the [CC-BY-SA 3.0](#) license.

#### Security

If vulnerabilities are found in the upstream library and fixed there, they might not be fixed in the library bundled with the port. One reason could be that the author is not aware of the problem. This means that the porter must fix them, or upgrade to a non-vulnerable version, and send a patch to the author. This all takes time, which results in software being vulnerable longer than necessary. This in turn makes it harder to coordinate a fix without unnecessarily leaking information about the vulnerability.

#### Bugs

This problem is similar to the problem with security in the last paragraph, but generally less severe.

#### Forking

It is easier for the author to fork the upstream library once it is bundled. While convenient on first sight, it means that the code diverges from upstream making it harder to address security or other problems with the software. A reason for this is that patching becomes harder.

Another problem of forking is that because code diverges from upstream, bugs get solved over and over again instead of just once at a central location. This defeats the idea of open source software in the first place.

### Symbol collision

When a library is installed on the system, it might collide with the bundled version. This can cause immediate errors at compile or link time. It can also cause errors when running the program which might be harder to track down. The latter problem could be caused because the versions of the two libraries are incompatible.

### Licensing

When bundling projects from different sources, license issues can arise more easily, especially when licenses are incompatible.

### Waste of resources

Bundled libraries waste resources on several levels. It takes longer to build the actual application, especially if these libraries are already present on the system. At run-time, they can take up unnecessary memory when the system-wide library is already loaded by one program and the bundled library is loaded by another program.

### Waste of effort

When a library needs patches for FreeBSD, these patches have to be duplicated again in the bundled library. This wastes developer time because the patches might not apply cleanly. It can also be hard to notice that these patches are required in the first place.

## 6.2.2. What to do About Bundled Libraries

Whenever possible, use the unbundled version of the library by adding a `LIB_DEPENDS` to the port. If such a port does not exist yet, consider creating it.

Bundled libraries should only be used if upstream has a good track record on security and using unbundled versions leads to overly complex patches.

## 6.3. Shared Libraries

If your port installs one or more shared libraries, define a `USE_LDCONFIG` make variable, which will instruct a `bsd.port.mk` to run `${LDCONFIG} -m` on the directory where the new library is installed (usually `PREFIX/lib`) during `post-install` target to register it into the shared library cache. This variable, when defined, will also facilitate addition of an appropriate `@exec /sbin/ldconfig -m` and `@unexec /sbin/ldconfig -R` pair into your `pkg-plist` file, so that a user who installed the package can start using the shared library immediately and de-installation will not cause the system to still believe the library is there.

```
USE_LDCONFIG= yes
```

If you need, you can override the default directory by setting the `USE_LDCONFIG` value to a list of directories into which shared libraries are to be installed. For example if your port installs shared libraries into `PREFIX/lib/foo` and `PREFIX/lib/bar` directories you could use the following in your Makefile:

```
USE_LDCONFIG= ${PREFIX}/lib/foo ${PREFIX}/lib/bar
```

Please double-check, often this is not necessary at all or can be avoided through `-rpath` or setting `LD_RUN_PATH` during linking (see [lang/moscow\\_ml](#) for an example), or through a shell-wrapper which sets `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` before invoking the binary, like [www/sea-monkey](#) does.

When installing 32-bit libraries on 64-bit system, use `USE_LDCONFIG32` instead.

If the software you are porting uses [autotools](#), and specifically `libtool`, you should add `USES=libtool`.

When the major library version number increments in the update to the new port version, all other ports that link to the affected library should have their `PORTREVISION` incremented, to force recompilation with the new library version.

## 6.4. Ports with Distribution Restrictions or Legal Concerns

Licenses vary, and some of them place restrictions on how the application can be packaged, whether it can be sold for profit, and so on.



### Important

It is your responsibility as a porter to read the licensing terms of the software and make sure that the FreeBSD project will not be held accountable for violating them by redistributing the source or compiled binaries either via FTP/HTTP or CD-ROM. If in doubt, please contact the [FreeBSD ports mailing list](#).

In situations like this, the variables described in the following sections can be set.

### 6.4.1. NO\_PACKAGE

This variable indicates that we may not generate a binary package of the application. For instance, the license may disallow binary redistribution, or it may prohibit distribution of packages created from patched sources.

However, the port's DISTFILES may be freely mirrored on FTP/HTTP. They may also be distributed on a CD-ROM (or similar media) unless NO\_CDROM is set as well.

NO\_PACKAGE should also be used if the binary package is not generally useful, and the application should always be compiled from the source code. For example, if the application has configuration information that is site specific hard coded in to it at compile time, set NO\_PACKAGE .

NO\_PACKAGE should be set to a string describing the reason why the package should not be generated.

### 6.4.2. NO\_CDROM

This variable alone indicates that, although we are allowed to generate binary packages, we may put neither those packages nor the port's DISTFILES onto a CD-ROM (or similar media) for resale. However, the binary packages and the port's DISTFILES will still be available via FTP/HTTP.

If this variable is set along with NO\_PACKAGE , then only the port's DISTFILES will be available, and only via FTP/HTTP.

NO\_CDROM should be set to a string describing the reason why the port cannot be redistributed on CD-ROM. For instance, this should be used if the port's license is for “non-commercial” use only.

### 6.4.3. NOFETCHFILES

Files defined in the NOFETCHFILES variable are not fetchable from any of the MASTER\_SITES . An example of such a file is when the file is supplied on CD-ROM by the vendor.

Tools which check for the availability of these files on the MASTER\_SITES should ignore these files and not report about them.

### 6.4.4. RESTRICTED

Set this variable alone if the application's license permits neither mirroring the application's DISTFILES nor distributing the binary package in any way.

NO\_CDROM or NO\_PACKAGE should not be set along with RESTRICTED since the latter variable implies the former ones.

RESTRICTED should be set to a string describing the reason why the port cannot be redistributed. Typically, this indicates that the port contains proprietary software and that the user will need to manually download the DISTFILES, possibly after registering for the software or agreeing to accept the terms of an EULA.

### 6.4.5. RESTRICTED\_FILES

When `RESTRICTED` or `NO_CDROM` is set, this variable defaults to `${DISTFILES} ${PATCH-FILES}`, otherwise it is empty. If only some of the distribution files are restricted, then set this variable to list them.

### 6.4.6. LEGAL\_TEXT

If the port has legal concerns not addressed by the above variables, the variable `LEGAL_TEXT` should be set to a string explaining the concern. For example, if special permission was obtained for FreeBSD to redistribute the binary, this variable should indicate so.

### 6.4.7. /usr/ports/LEGAL and LEGAL

A port which sets any of the above variables must also be added to `/usr/ports/LEGAL`. The first column is a glob which matches the restricted distfiles. The second column is the port's origin. The third column is the output of `make -VLEGAL`.

### 6.4.8. Examples

The preferred way to state "the distfiles for this port must be fetched manually" is as follows:

```
.if !exists(${DISTDIR}/${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFX})
IGNORE= may not be redistributed because of licensing reasons. ☹
Please visit some-website to accept their license and download ☹
${DISTFILES} into ${DISTDIR}
.endif
```

This both informs the user, and sets the proper metadata on the user's machine for use by automated programs.

Note that this stanza must be preceded by an inclusion of `bsd.port.pre.mk`.

## 6.5. Building Mechanisms

### 6.5.1. Building Ports in Parallel

The FreeBSD ports framework supports parallel building using multiple `make` sub-processes, which allows SMP systems to utilize all of their available CPU power, allowing port builds to be faster and more effective.

This is achieved by passing `-jX` flag to [make\(1\)](#) running on vendor code. This is the default build behavior of ports. Unfortunately, not all ports handle parallel building well and it may be required to explicitly disable this feature by adding the `MAKE_JOBS_UNSAFE=yes` variable. It is used when a port is known to be broken with `-jX`.

### 6.5.2. make, gmake, fmake, and imake

Several differing make implementations exist. Ported software often requires a particular implementation, like GNU make, known in FreeBSD as gmake, or fmake, the legacy FreeBSD make.

If the port uses GNU make, add gmake to USES. If the legacy FreeBSD make is needed, add fmake there.

MAKE\_CMD can be used to reference the specific command configured by the USES setting in the port's Makefile. In rare cases when more than one make implementation is listed in USES, the variables GMAKE (for the GNU version) or FMAKE (for the legacy FreeBSD version) are available. Most ports should only use MAKE\_CMD within the application Makefiles in WRKSRC to call the make implementation expected by the ported software.

If the port is an X application that uses imake to create Makefiles from Imakefiles, set USES= imake .. See the [USES=imake](#) section of [Chapter 15, Values of USES](#) for more details.

If your port's source Makefile has something else than all as the main build target, set ALL\_TARGET accordingly. Same goes for install and INSTALL\_TARGET .

### 6.5.3. configure Script

If your port uses the configure script to generate Makefile files from Makefile.in files, set GNU\_CONFIGURE=yes . If you want to give extra arguments to the configure script (the default argument is --prefix=\${PREFIX} --infodir=\${PREFIX}/\${INFO\_PATH} --mandir=\${MANPREFIX}/man --build=\${CONFIGURE\_TARGET} ), set those extra arguments in CONFIGURE\_ARGS . Extra environment variables can be passed using CONFIGURE\_ENV variable.

Table 6.1. Variables for Ports That Use configure

Variable	Means
GNU_CONFIGURE	The port uses configure script to prepare build.
HAS_CONFIGURE	Same as GNU_CONFIGURE , except default configure target is not added to CONFIGURE_ARGS .
CONFIGURE_ARGS	Additional arguments passed to configure script.
CONFIGURE_ENV	Additional environment variables to be set for configure script run.
CONFIGURE_TARGET	Override default configure target. Default value is \${MACHINE_ARCH}-port-bld-freebsd\${OSREL} .

### 6.5.4. Using cmake

For ports that use CMake, define `USES= cmake`, or `USES= cmake:outsource` to build in a separate directory (see below).

Table 6.2. Variables for Ports That Use `cmake`

Variable	Means
<code>CMAKE_ARGS</code>	Port specific CMake flags to be passed to the <code>cmake</code> binary.
<code>CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE</code>	Type of build (CMake predefined build profiles). Default is <code>Release</code> , or <code>Debug</code> if <code>WITH_DEBUG</code> is set.
<code>CMAKE_ENV</code>	Environment variables to be set for the <code>cmake</code> binary. Default is <code>\${CONFIGURE_ENV}</code> .
<code>CMAKE_SOURCE_PATH</code>	Path to the source directory. Default is <code>\${WRKSRC}</code> .

Table 6.3. Variables the Users can define for `cmake` builds

Variable	Means
<code>CMAKE_VERBOSE</code>	Enable verbose build output. Default not set, unless <code>BATCH</code> or <code>PACKAGE_BUILDING</code> are set.
<code>CMAKE_NOCOLOR</code>	Disables colour build output. Default not set, unless <code>BATCH</code> or <code>PACKAGE_BUILDING</code> are set.

CMake supports the following build profiles: `Debug`, `Release`, `RelWithDebInfo` and `MinSizeRel`. `Debug` and `Release` profiles respect system `*FLAGS`, `RelWithDebInfo` and `MinSizeRel` will set `CFLAGS` to `-O2 -g` and `-Os -DNDEBUG` correspondingly. The lower-cased value of `CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE` is exported to the `PLIST_SUB` and should be used if port installs `*.cmake` files depending on the build type (see [deskutils/strigi](#) for an example). Please note that some projects may define their own build profiles and/or force particular build type by setting `CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE` in `CMakeLists.txt` files. In order to make a port for such a project respect `CFLAGS` and `WITH_DEBUG`, the `CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE` definitions must be removed from those files.

Most CMake-based projects support an out-of-source method of building. The out-of-source build for a port can be requested by using the `:outsource` suffix. When enabled, `CONFIGURE_WRKSRC`, `BUILD_WRKSRC` and `INSTALL_WRKSRC` will be set to `${WRKDIR}/.build` and this directory will be used to keep all files generated during configuration and build stages, leaving the source directory intact.



### Example 6.1. `USES= cmake` Example

The following snippet demonstrates the use of CMake for a port. `CMAKE_SOURCE_PATH` is not usually required, but can be set when the sources are not located in the top directory, or if only a subset of the project is intended to be built by the port.

```
USES=      cmake:outsources
CMAKE_SOURCE_PATH= ${WRKSRCS}/subproject
```

#### 6.5.5. Using `scons`

If your port uses SCons, define `USE_SCONS=yes` .

Table 6.4. Variables for Ports That Use `SCONS`

Variable	Means
<code>SCONS_ARGS</code>	Port specific SCons flags passed to the SCons environment.
<code>SCONS_BUILDENV</code>	Variables to be set in system environment.
<code>SCONS_ENV</code>	Variables to be set in SCons environment.
<code>SCONS_TARGET</code>	Last argument passed to SCons, similar to <code>MAKE_TARGET</code> .

To make third party SConstruct respect everything that is passed to SCons in `SCONS_ENV` (that is, most importantly, `CC/CXX/CFLAGS/CXXFLAGS` ), patch the SConstruct so build Environment is constructed like this:

```
env = Environment(**ARGUMENTS)
```

It may be then modified with `env.Append` and `env.Replace` .

## 6.6. Using GNU Autotools

### 6.6.1. Introduction

The various GNU autotools provide an abstraction mechanism for building a piece of software over a wide variety of operating systems and machine architectures. Within the Ports Collection, an individual port can make use of these tools via a simple construct:

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= tool[:env] ...
```

At the time of writing, *tool* can be one of *autoconf*, *autoheader*, *automake*, *aclocal*, *libtool* (deprecated), *libtoolize*, *libltdl*. It can also be one the older legacy of *autoconf213*, *autoheader213*, *automake14*, *aclocal14*.

*env* is used to specify that the environmental variables are needed. It also adds a build dependency on the tool. The relevant tool is *not* ran as part of the *run-autotools* target.

Multiple tools can be specified at once, either by including them all on a single line, or using the += Makefile construct.

### 6.6.2. libtool

The use of `USE_AUTOTOOLS=libtool` is deprecated. Now all ports that ship with their own copy of *libtool* (search for a file named *ltmain.sh*) need to have `USES=libtool`. Also, if a port has `USE_AUTOTOOLS=libtoolize` it probably also needs `USES=libtool`. See the [USES=libtool](#) section in [Chapter 15, Values of USES](#) for more details.

### 6.6.3. libltdl

Some ports make use of the *libltdl* library package, which is part of the *libtool* suite. Use of this library does not automatically necessitate the use of *libtool* itself, so a separate construct is provided.

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= libltdl
```

Currently, all this does is to bring in a `LIB_DEPENDS` on the appropriate *libltdl* port, and is provided as a convenience function to help eliminate any dependencies on the *autotools* ports outside of the `USE_AUTOTOOLS` framework. There are no optional operations for this tool.

### 6.6.4. autoconf and autoheader

Some ports do not contain a configure script, but do contain an *autoconf* template in the *configure.ac* file. You can use the following assignments to let *autoconf* create the configure script, and also have *autoheader* create template headers for use by the configure script.

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= autoconf[:env]
```

and

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= autoheader
```

which also implies the use of *autoconf*.

The additional optional variables `AUTOCONF_ARGS` and `AUTOHEADER_ARGS` can be overridden by the port Makefile if specifically requested. Most ports are unlikely to need this. See `bsd.autotools.mk` for further details.

### 6.6.5. automake and aclocal

Some packages only contain `Makefile.am` files. These have to be converted into `Makefile.in` files using `automake`, and the further processed by `configure` to generate an actual Makefile.

Similarly, packages occasionally do not ship with included `aclocal.m4` files, again required to build the software. This can be achieved with `aclocal`, which scans `configure.ac` or `configure.in`.

`aclocal` has a similar relationship to `automake` as `autoheader` does to `autoconf`, described in the previous section. `aclocal` implies the use of `automake`, thus we have:

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= automake[:env]
```

and

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= aclocal
```

As with `autoconf` and `autoheader`, both `automake` and `aclocal` have optional argument variables, `AUTOMAKE_ARGS` and `ACLOCAL_ARGS` respectively, which may be overridden by the port Makefile if required.

## 6.7. Using GNU `gettext`

### 6.7.1. Basic Usage

If your port requires `gettext`, set `USES= gettext`, and your port will inherit a dependency on `libintl.so` from [devel/gettext](#). Other values for `gettext` usage are listed in [USES=gettext](#).

A rather common case is a port using `gettext` and `configure`. Generally, GNU `configure` should be able to locate `gettext` automatically.

```
USES= gettext
GNU_CONFIGURE= yes
```

If it ever fails to, hints at the location of `gettext` can be passed in `CPPFLAGS` and `LDFLAGS` as follows:

```
USES= gettext
CPPFLAGS+= -I${LOCALBASE}/include
LDLAGS+= -L${LOCALBASE}/lib

GNU_CONFIGURE= yes
```

## 6.7.2. Optional Usage

Some software products allow for disabling NLS, e.g., through passing `--disable-nls` to configure. In that case, your port should use `gettext` conditionally, depending on the status of the NLS option. For ports of low to medium complexity, you can rely on the following idiom:

```
GNU_CONFIGURE= yes

OPTIONS_DEFINE= NLS
OPTIONS_SUB= yes

NLS_USES= gettext
NLS_CONFIGURE_ENABLE= nls

.include <bsd.port.mk>
```

Or using the older way of using options:

```
GNU_CONFIGURE= yes

OPTIONS_DEFINE= NLS

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MNLS}
USES+= gettext
PLIST_SUB+= NLS=""
.else
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --disable-nls
PLIST_SUB+= NLS="@comment "
.endif

.include <bsd.port.mk>
```

The next item on your to-do list is to arrange so that the message catalog files are included in the packing list conditionally. The Makefile part of this task is already provided by the idiom. It is explained in the section on [advanced pkg-plist practices](#). In a nutshell, each occurrence of `%%NLS%%` in `pkg-plist` will be replaced by `"@comment "` if NLS is disabled, or by a null string if NLS is enabled. Consequently, the lines prefixed by `%%NLS%%` will become mere comments in the final packing list if NLS is off; otherwise the prefix will be just left out. All you need to do now is insert `%%NLS%%` before each path to a message catalog file in `pkg-plist`. For example:

```
%%NLS%%share/locale/fr/LC_MESSAGES/foobar.mo
%%NLS%%share/locale/no/LC_MESSAGES/foobar.mo
```

In high complexity cases, you may need to use more advanced techniques than the recipe given here, such as [dynamic packing list generation](#).

### 6.7.3. Handling Message Catalog Directories

There is a point to note about installing message catalog files. The target directories for them, which reside under `LOCALBASE/share/locale`, should rarely be created and removed by a port. The most popular languages have their respective directories listed in `PORTSDIR/Templates/BSD.local.dist`. The directories for many other languages are governed by the [devel/gettext](#) port. Consult its `pkg-plist` and see whether the port is going to install a message catalog file for a unique language.

## 6.8. Using Perl

If `MASTER_SITES` is set to `CPAN`, the correct subdirectory should be selected automatically. If the default subdirectory is wrong, `CPAN/Module` can be used to change it. `MASTER_SITES` can also be set to the old `MASTER_SITE_PERL_CPAN`, then the preferred value of `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` is the top-level hierarchy name. For example, the recommended value for `p5-Module-Name` is `Module`. The top-level hierarchy can be examined at [cpan.org](#). This keeps the port working when the author of the module changes.

The exception to this rule is when the relevant directory does not exist or the distfile does not exist in that directory. In such case, using author's id as `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` is allowed. The `CPAN:AUTHOR` macro can be used, which will be translated to the hashed author directory. (e.g., `CPAN:AUTHOR` will be converted to `authors/id/A/AU/AUTHOR`.)

When a port needs Perl support, it should use `USES=perl5` with the optional `USE_PERL5` like described in [the perl5 USES description](#).

Table 6.5. Read-Only Variables for Ports That Use Perl

Read only variables	Means
<code>PERL</code>	The full path of the Perl 5 interpreter, either in the system or installed from a port, but without the version number. Use this if you need to replace “#!” lines in scripts.
<code>PERL_VERSION</code>	The full version of Perl installed (e.g., 5.8.9).
<code>PERL_LEVEL</code>	The installed Perl version as an integer of the form <code>MNNPP</code> (e.g., 500809).
<code>PERL_ARCH</code>	Where Perl stores architecture dependent libraries. Defaults to <code>\${ARCH}-freebsd</code> .
<code>PERL_PORT</code>	Name of the Perl port that is installed (e.g., <code>perl5</code> ).

Read only variables	Means
<code>SITE_PERL</code>	Directory name where site specific Perl packages go. This value is added to <code>PLIST_SUB</code> .



### Note

Ports of Perl modules which do not have an official website should link to `cpan.org` in the `WWW` line of `pkg-descr`. The preferred URL form is `http://search.cpan.org/dist/Module-Name/` (including the trailing slash).



### Note

Do not use `${SITE_PERL}` in dependency declarations. Doing so assumes that `perl5.mk` has been included, which is not always true. Ports depending on this port will have incorrect dependencies if this port's files move later in an upgrade. The right way to declare Perl module dependencies is shown in the example below.

## Example 6.2. Perl Dependency Example

```
p5-I0-Tee>=0.64:${PORTSDIR}/devel/p5-I0-Tee
```

For Perl ports that install manual pages, the macro `PERL5_MAN3` can be used inside `pkg-plist`. For example,

```
lib/perl5/5.14/man/man3/AnyEvent::I3.3.gz
```

can be replaced with

```
%%PERL5_MAN3%/AnyEvent::I3.3.gz
```



### Note

There are no `PERL5_MANx` macros for the other sections (`x` in 1, 2 and 4 to 9) because those get installed in the regular directories.

## 6.9. Using X11

### 6.9.1. X.Org Components

The X11 implementation available in The Ports Collection is X.Org. If your application depends on X components, set `USE_XORG` to the list of required components. Available components, at the time of writing, are:

```
bigreqsproto compositeproto damageproto dmx dmxproto dri2proto dri3proto
evieproto fixesproto fontcacheproto fontenc fontsproto fontutil glproto ice
inputproto kbproto libfs oldx pciaccess pixman presentproto printproto randr-
proto recordproto renderproto resourceproto scrnsaverproto sm trapproto video-
proto x11 xau xaw xaw6 xaw7 xbitmaps xcb xcmiscproto xcomposite xcursor xdam-
age xdmcp xevie xext xextproto xf86bigfontproto xf86dgaproto xf86driproto
xf86miscproto xf86rushproto xf86vidmodeproto xfixes xfont xfontcache xft
xi xinerama xineramaproto xkbfile xkbui xmu xmuu xorg-macros xorg-server xp
xpm xprintapputil xprintutil xproto xproxymngproto xrandr xrender xres xscrn-
saver xshmfence xt xtrans xtrap xtst xv xvmc xxf86dga xxf86misc xxf86vm .
```

Always up-to-date list can be found in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.xorg.mk` .

The Mesa Project is an effort to provide free OpenGL implementation. You can specify a dependency on various components of this project with `USE_GL` variable. Valid options are: `egl`, `gl`, `glesv2`, `glew`, `glu`, `glut`, `glw` and `linux`. For backwards compatibility, the value of `yes` maps to `glu`.

### Example 6.3. `USE_XORG` Example

```
USE_XORG= xrender xft xkbfile xt xaw
USE_GL= glu
```

Table 6.6. Variables for Ports That Use X

`USES= imake`

The port uses `imake`.

XMKMF

Set to the path of `xmkmf` if not in the `PATH`.  
Defaults to `xmkmf -a`.

### Example 6.4. Using X11-Related Variables

```
# Use some X11 libraries
USE_XORG= x11 xpm
```

## 6.9.2. Ports That Require Motif

If your port requires a Motif library, define `USES= motif` in the Makefile. Default Motif implementation is [x11-toolkits/open-motif](#). Users can choose [x11-toolkits/lesstif](#) instead by setting `WANT_LESSTIF` variable in their `make.conf`.

The `MOTIFLIB` variable will be set by `motif.mk` to reference the appropriate Motif library. Please patch the source of your port to use `${MOTIFLIB}` wherever the Motif library is referenced in the original Makefile or Imakefile.

There are two common cases:

- If the port refers to the Motif library as `-lXm` in its Makefile or Imakefile, simply substitute `${MOTIFLIB}` for it.
- If the port uses `XmClientLibs` in its Imakefile, change it to `${MOTIFLIB} ${XTOLLIB} ${XLIB}`.

Note that `MOTIFLIB` (usually) expands to `-L/usr/local/lib -lXm -lXp` or `/usr/local/lib/libXm.a`, so there is no need to add `-L` or `-l` in front.

## 6.9.3. X11 Fonts

If your port installs fonts for the X Window System, put them in `LOCALBASE/lib/X11/fonts/local`.

## 6.9.4. Getting a Fake DISPLAY with Xvfb

Some applications require a working X11 display for compilation to succeed. This poses a problem for machines that operate headless. When the following variable is used, the build infrastructure will start the virtual framebuffer X server. The working `DISPLAY` is then passed to the build. See [USES=display](#) for the possible arguments.

```
USES= display
```



## 6.9.5. Desktop Entries

Desktop entries ([a freedesktop standard](#)) provide a way to automatically adjust desktop features when a new program is installed, without requiring user intervention. For example, newly-installed programs automatically appear in the application menus of compatible desktop environments. Desktop entries originated in the GNOME desktop environment, but are now a standard and also work with KDE and Xfce. This bit of automation provides a real benefit to the user, and desktop entries are encouraged for applications which can be used in a desktop environment.

### 6.9.5.1. Using Predefined `.desktop` Files

Ports that include predefined `*.desktop` files should include those files in `pkg-plist` and install them in the `$LOCALBASE/share/applications` directory. The [INSTALL\\_DATA macro](#) is useful for installing these files.

### 6.9.5.2. Updating Desktop Database

If a port has a `MimeType` entry in its `portname.desktop`, the desktop database must be updated after install and deinstall. To do this, define `USES= desktop-file-utils`.

### 6.9.5.3. Creating Desktop Entries with the `DESKTOP_ENTRIES` Macro

Desktop entries can be easily created for applications by using the `DESKTOP_ENTRIES` variable. A file named `name.desktop` will be created, installed, and added to the `pkg-plist` automatically. Syntax is:

```
DESKTOP_ENTRIES= "NAME" "COMMENT" "ICON" "COMMAND" "CATEGORY" 3
StartupNotify
```

The list of possible categories is available on the [Freedesktop website](#). `StartupNotify` indicates whether the application is compatible with *startup notifications*. These are typically a graphic indicator like a clock that appear at the mouse pointer, menu, or panel to give the user an indication when a program is starting. A program that is compatible with startup notifications clears the indicator after it has started. Programs that are not compatible with startup notifications would never clear the indicator (potentially confusing and infuriating the user), and should have `StartupNotify` set to `false` so the indicator is not shown at all.

Example:

```
DESKTOP_ENTRIES= "ToME" "Roguelike game based on JRR Tolkien's 3
work" \
"${DATADIR}/extra/graf/tome-128.png" \
"tome -v -g" "Application;Game;RolePlaying;" \
false
```

## 6.10. Using GNOME

The FreeBSD/GNOME project uses its own set of variables to define which GNOME components a particular port uses. A [comprehensive list of these variables](#) exists within the FreeBSD/GNOME project's homepage.

## 6.11. Using Qt

### 6.11.1. Ports That Require Qt

The Ports Collection provides support for Qt 4 and Qt 5 frameworks with the `USE_QT $x$`  variable, where  $x$  is 4 or 5. `USE_QT $x$`  should be set to the list of required Qt components (libraries, tools, plugins). The Qt 4 and Qt 5 frameworks are quite similar. The main difference is the set of supported components.

The Qt framework exports a number of variables which can be used by ports, some of them listed below:

Table 6.7. Variables Provided to Ports That Use Qt

<code>QT_PREFIX</code>	Set to the path where Qt was installed ( <code>\${LOCALBASE}</code> ).
<code>QMAKE</code>	Full path to <code>qmake</code> binary.
<code>LRELEASE</code>	Full path to <code>lrelease</code> utility.
<code>MOC</code>	Full path to <code>moc</code> .
<code>RCC</code>	Full path to <code>rcc</code> .
<code>UIC</code>	Full path to <code>uic</code> .
<code>QT_INCDIR</code>	Qt include directory.
<code>QT_LIBDIR</code>	Qt libraries path.
<code>QT_PLUGINDIR</code>	Qt plugins path.

When using the Qt framework, these settings are deployed:

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --with-qt-includes=${QT_INCDIR} \
  --with-qt-libraries=${QT_LIBDIR} \
  --with-extra-libs=${LOCALBASE}/lib \
  --with-extra-includes=${LOCALBASE}/include

CONFIGURE_ENV+= QTDIR="${QT_PREFIX}" QMAKE="${QMAKE}" \
  MOC="${MOC}" RCC="${RCC}" UIC="${UIC}" \
  QMAKESPEC="${QMAKESPEC}"

PLIST_SUB+= QT_INCDIR=${QT_INCDIR_REL} \
  QT_LIBDIR=${QT_LIBDIR_REL} \
```

```
QT_PLUGINDIR=${QT_PLUGINDIR_REL}
```

Some configure scripts do not support the arguments above. To suppress modification of `CONFIGURE_ENV` and `CONFIGURE_ARGS`, set the `QT_NONSTANDARD` variable.

### 6.11.2. Component Selection

Individual Qt tool and library dependencies must be specified in the `USE_QT $x$`  variable. Every component can be suffixed with `_build` or `_run`, the suffix indicating whether the component should be depended on at buildtime or runtime. If unsuffixed, the component will be depended on at both build- and runtime. Usually, library components should be specified unsuffixed, tool components should be specified with the `_build` suffix and plugin components should be specified with the `_run` suffix. The most commonly used components are listed below (all available components are listed in `_USE_QT_ALL`, `_USE_QT4_ONLY`, and `_USE_QT5_ONLY` variables in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.qt.mk`):

Table 6.8. Available Qt Library Components

Name	Description
core	core library (Qt 5 only)
corelib	core library (Qt 4 only)
dbus	Qt Dbus library
gui	graphical user interface library
network	network library
opengl	Qt OpenGL library
script	script library
sql	SQL library
testlib	unit testing library
webkit	Qt WebKit library
xml	Qt XML library

To determine the libraries an application depends on, run `ldd` on the main executable after a successful compilation.

Table 6.9. Available Qt Tool Components

Name	Description
qmake	Makefile generator/build utility
buildtools	build tools (moc, rcc), needed for almost every Qt application (Qt 5 only)

Name	Description
linguisttools	localization tools: lrelease, lupdate (Qt 5 only)
linguist	localization tools: lrelease, lupdate (Qt 4 only)
moc	meta object compiler, needed for almost every Qt application at buildtime (Qt 4 only)
rcc	resource compiler, needed if the application comes with *.rc or *.qrc files (Qt 4 only)
uic	user interface compiler, needed if the application comes with *.ui files, in practice, every Qt application with a GUI (Qt 4 only)

Table 6.10. Available Qt Plugin Components

Name	Description
iconengines	SVG icon engine plugin, needed if the application ships SVG icons (Qt 4 only)
imageformats	plugins for TGA, TIFF, and MNG image formats

### Example 6.5. Selecting Qt 4 Components

In this example, the ported application uses the Qt 4 graphical user interface library, the Qt 4 core library, all of the Qt 4 code generation tools and Qt 4's Makefile generator. Since the gui library implies a dependency on the core library, core-lib does not need to be specified. The Qt 4 code generation tools moc, uic and rcc, as well as the Makefile generator qmake are only needed at buildtime, thus they are specified with the \_build suffix:

```
USE_QT4= gui moc_build qmake_build rcc_build uic_build
```

#### 6.11.3. Using qmake

If the application provides a qmake project file (\*.pro), define `USES= qmake` along with `USE_QT x`. Note that `USES= qmake` already implies a build dependency on qmake, therefore the qmake component can be omitted from `USE_QT x`. Similar to [CMake](#), qmake supports

out-of-source builds, which can be enabled by specifying the `outsources` argument (see [USES= qmake example](#)).

Table 6.11. Variables for Ports That Use `qmake`

Variable	Means
<code>QMAKE_ARGS</code>	Port specific <code>qmake</code> flags to be passed to the <code>qmake</code> binary.
<code>QMAKE_ENV</code>	Environment variables to be set for the <code>qmake</code> binary. The default is <code>\${CONFIGURE_ENV}</code> .
<code>QMAKE_SOURCE_PATH</code>	Path to <code>qmake</code> project files ( <code>.pro</code> ). The default is <code>\${WRKSR}</code> if an out-of-source build is requested, empty otherwise.

### Example 6.6. `USES= qmake` Example

This snippet demonstrates the use of `qmake` for a Qt 4 port:

```
USES= qmake:outsources
USE_QT4= moc_build
```

For a Qt 5 port:

```
USES= qmake:outsources
USE_QT5= buildtools_build
```

Qt applications are often written to be cross-platform and often X11/Unix is not the platform they are developed on, which in turn leads to certain loose ends, like:

- *Missing additional include paths.* Many applications come with system tray icon support, but neglect to look for includes and/or libraries in the X11 directories. You can tell `qmake` to add directories to the include and library search paths via the command line, for example:

```
QMAKE_ARGS+= INCLUDEPATH+=${LOCALBASE}/include \
LIBS+=-L${LOCALBASE}/lib
```

- *Bogus installation paths.* Sometimes data such as icons or `.desktop` files are by default installed into directories which are not scanned by XDG-compatible applications. [editors/texmaker](#) is an example for this - look at `patch-texmaker.pro` in the `files` directory of that port for a template on how to remedy this directly in the `qmake` project file.

## 6.12. Using KDE

### 6.12.1. KDE 4 Variable Definitions

If the application depends on KDE 4, set `USE_KDE4` to the list of required components. `_build` and `_run` suffixes can be used to force components dependency type (e.g., `baseapps_run`). If no suffix is set, a default dependency type will be used. If you want to force both types, add the component twice with both suffixes (e.g., `automoc4_build` `automoc4_run`). The most commonly used components are listed below (up-to-date components are documented at the top of `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.kde4.mk`):

Table 6.12. Available KDE 4 Components

Name	Description
kdehier	Hierarchy of common KDE directories
kdelibs	KDE core libraries
kdeprefix	If set, port will be installed into <code>\${KDE4_PREFIX}</code>
automoc4	Build tool to automatically generate moc files
akonadi	Storage server for KDE PIM data
soprano	Library for Resource Description Framework (RDF)
strigi	Strigi desktop search library
libkcddb	KDE CDDb (compact disc database) library
libkcompactdisc	KDE library for interfacing with audio CDs
libkdeedu	Libraries used by educational applications
libkdcraw	KDE LibRaw library
libkexiv2	KDE Exiv2 library
libkipi	KDE Image Plugin Interface
libkonq	Konqueror core library
libksane	KDE SANE ("Scanner Access Now Easy") library
pimlibs	Personal information management libraries
kate	Advanced text editor framework
marble	Virtual globe and world atlas
okular	Universal document viewer

Name	Description
korundum	KDE Ruby bindings
perl kde	KDE Perl bindings
pykde4	KDE Python bindings
pykdeuic4	PyKDE user interface compiler
smokekde	KDE SMOKE libraries

KDE 4 ports are installed into `KDE4_PREFIX`. This is achieved by specifying the `kdeprefix` component, which overrides the default `PREFIX`. The ports, however, respect any `PREFIX` set via the `MAKEFLAGS` environment variable and/or `make` arguments. Currently `KDE4_PREFIX` is identical to the default `PREFIX`, `${LOCALBASE}`.

### Example 6.7. `USE_KDE4` Example

This is a simple example for a KDE 4 port. `USES= cmake:outsources` instructs the port to utilize CMake, a configuration tool widely used by KDE 4 projects (see [Section 6.5.4, “Using cmake”](#) for detailed usage). `USE_KDE4` brings dependency on KDE libraries and makes port using `automoc4` at build stage. Required KDE components and other dependencies can be determined through configure log. `USE_KDE4` does not imply `USE_QT4`. If a port requires some Qt 4 components, they should be specified in `USE_QT4`.

```
USES=  cmake:outsources
USE_KDE4= kdelibs kdeprefix automoc4
USE_QT4= moc_build qmake_build rcc_build uic_build
```

## 6.13. Using Java

### 6.13.1. Variable Definitions

If your port needs a Java™ Development Kit (JDK™) to either build, run or even extract the distfile, then it should define `USE_JAVA`.

There are several JDKs in the ports collection, from various vendors, and in several versions. If your port must use one of these versions, you can define which one. The most current version, and FreeBSD default is [java/openjdk6](#).

Table 6.13. Variables Which May be Set by Ports That Use Java

Variable	Means
USE_JAVA	Should be defined for the remaining variables to have any effect.
JAVA_VERSION	List of space-separated suitable Java versions for the port. An optional "+" allows you to specify a range of versions (allowed values: 1.5[+] 1.6[+] 1.7[+] ).
JAVA_OS	List of space-separated suitable JDK port operating systems for the port (allowed values: native linux).
JAVA_VENDOR	List of space-separated suitable JDK port vendors for the port (allowed values: freebsd bsdjava sun openjdk).
JAVA_BUILD	When set, it means that the selected JDK port should be added to the build dependencies of the port.
JAVA_RUN	When set, it means that the selected JDK port should be added to the run dependencies of the port.
JAVA_EXTRACT	When set, it means that the selected JDK port should be added to the extract dependencies of the port.

Below is the list of all settings a port will receive after setting USE\_JAVA :

Table 6.14. Variables Provided to Ports That Use Java

Variable	Value
JAVA_PORT	The name of the JDK port (e.g., 'java/openjdk6').
JAVA_PORT_VERSION	The full version of the JDK port (e.g., '1.6.0'). If you only need the first two digits of this version number, use <code>\${JAVA_PORT_VERSION:C/^[0-9]\.[0-9](.*)\$/\1.\2/}</code> .
JAVA_PORT_OS	The operating system used by the JDK port (e.g., 'native').
JAVA_PORT_VENDOR	The vendor of the JDK port (e.g., 'openjdk').



Variable	Value
JAVA_PORT_OS_DESCRIPTION	Description of the operating system used by the JDK port (e.g., 'Native').
JAVA_PORT_VENDOR_DESCRIPTION	Description of the vendor of the JDK port (e.g., 'OpenJDK BSD Porting Team').
JAVA_HOME	Path to the installation directory of the JDK (e.g., '/usr/local/openjdk6').
JAVAC	Path to the Java compiler to use (e.g., '/usr/local/openjdk6/bin/javac').
JAR	Path to the jar tool to use (e.g., '/usr/local/openjdk6/bin/jar' or '/usr/local/bin/fastjar').
APPLETVIEWER	Path to the appletviewer utility (e.g., '/usr/local/openjdk6/bin/appletviewer').
JAVA	Path to the java executable. Use this for executing Java programs (e.g., '/usr/local/openjdk6/bin/java').
JAVADOC	Path to the javadoc utility program.
JAVAH	Path to the javah program.
JAVAP	Path to the javap program.
JAVA_KEYTOOL	Path to the keytool utility program.
JAVA_N2A	Path to the native2ascii tool.
JAVA_POLICYTOOL	Path to the policytool program.
JAVA_SERIALVER	Path to the serialver utility program.
RMIC	Path to the RMI stub/skeleton generator, rmic.
RMIREGISTRY	Path to the RMI registry program, rmiregistry.
RMID	Path to the RMI daemon program rmid.
JAVA_CLASSES	Path to the archive that contains the JDK class files, \${JAVA_HOME}/jre/lib/rt.jar.

You may use the `java-debug` make target to get information for debugging your port. It will display the value of many of the forecited variables.

Additionally, the following constants are defined so all Java ports may be installed in a consistent way:

Table 6.15. Constants Defined for Ports That Use Java

Constant	Value
JAVASHAREDIR	The base directory for everything related to Java. Default: <code>\${PREFIX}/share/java</code> .
JAVAJARDIR	The directory where JAR files should be installed. Default: <code>\${JAVASHAREDIR}/classes</code> .
JAVALIBDIR	The directory where JAR files installed by other ports are located. Default: <code>\${LOCAL-BASE}/share/java/classes</code> .

The related entries are defined in both `PLIST_SUB` (documented in [Section 7.1, “Changing pkg-plist Based on Make Variables”](#)) and `SUB_LIST`.

### 6.13.2. Building with Ant

When the port is to be built using Apache Ant, it has to define `USE_ANT`. Ant is thus considered to be the sub-make command. When no `do-build` target is defined by the port, a default one will be set that simply runs Ant according to `MAKE_ENV`, `MAKE_ARGS` and `ALL_TARGET`. This is similar to the `USES= gmake` mechanism, which is documented in [Section 6.5, “Building Mechanisms”](#).

### 6.13.3. Best Practices

When porting a Java library, your port should install the JAR file(s) in `${JAVAJARDIR}`, and everything else under `${JAVASHAREDIR}/${PORTNAME}` (except for the documentation, see below). In order to reduce the packing file size, you may reference the JAR file(s) directly in the `Makefile`. Just use the following statement (where `myport.jar` is the name of the JAR file installed as part of the port):

```
PLIST_FILES+= %%JAVAJARDIR%%/myport.jar
```

When porting a Java application, the port usually installs everything under a single directory (including its JAR dependencies). The use of `${JAVASHAREDIR}/${PORTNAME}` is strongly encouraged in this regard. It is up to the porter to decide whether the port should install the additional JAR dependencies under this directory or directly use the already installed ones (from `${JAVAJARDIR}`).

When porting a Java™ application that requires an application server such as [www/tomcat7](#) to run the service, it is quite common for a vendor to distribute a `.war` file. A `.war` file is a Web application ARchive and is extracted when called by the application. Avoid adding a `.war` file to the `pkg-plist`. It is not considered best practice. An application

server will expand the war archive, but not clean it up properly if the port is removed. A more desirable way of working with this file is to extract the archive, then install the files, and lastly add these files to pkg-plist.

```
TOMCATDIR= ${LOCALBASE}/apache-tomcat-7.0
WEBAPPDIR= myapplication

post-extract:
  @${MKDIR} ${WRKDIR}/${PORTDIRNAME}
  @${TAR} xf ${WRKDIR}/myapplication.war -C ${WRKDIR}/${PORTDIRNAME}

do-install:
  cd ${WRKDIR} && \
    ${INSTALL} -d -o ${WWWOWN} -g ${WWWGRP} ${TOMCATDIR}/webapps/
  ${PORTDIRNAME}
  @cd ${WRKDIR}/${PORTDIRNAME} && ${COPYTREE_SHARE} \* ${WEBAPPDIR}/
  ${PORTDIRNAME}
```

Regardless of the type of your port (library or application), the additional documentation should be installed in the [same location](#) as for any other port. The JavaDoc tool is known to produce a different set of files depending on the version of the JDK that is used. For ports that do not enforce the use of a particular JDK, it is therefore a complex task to specify the packing list (pkg-plist). This is one reason why porters are strongly encouraged to use the PORTDOCS macro. Moreover, even if you can predict the set of files that will be generated by javadoc, the size of the resulting pkg-plist advocates for the use of PORTDOCS.

The default value for DATADIR is \${PREFIX}/share/\${PORTNAME}. It is a good idea to override DATADIR to \${JAVASHAREDIR}/\${PORTNAME} for Java ports. Indeed, DATADIR is automatically added to PLIST\_SUB (documented in [Section 7.1, “Changing pkg-plist Based on Make Variables”](#)) so you may use %%DATADIR%% directly in pkg-plist.

As for the choice of building Java ports from source or directly installing them from a binary distribution, there is no defined policy at the time of writing. However, people from the [FreeBSD Java Project](#) encourage porters to have their ports built from source whenever it is a trivial task.

All the features that have been presented in this section are implemented in `bsd.java.mk`. If you ever think that your port needs more sophisticated Java support, please first have a look at the [bsd.java.mk Subversion log](#) as it usually takes some time to document the latest features. Then, if you think the support you are lacking would be beneficial to many other Java ports, feel free to discuss it on the [FreeBSD Java Language mailing list](#).

Although there is a java category for PRs, it refers to the JDK porting effort from the FreeBSD Java project. Therefore, you should submit your Java port in the ports category as for any other port, unless the issue you are trying to resolve is related to either a JDK implementation or `bsd.java.mk`.

Similarly, there is a defined policy regarding the CATEGORIES of a Java port, which is detailed in [Section 5.3, “Categorization”](#).

## 6.14. Web Applications, Apache and PHP

### 6.14.1. Apache

Table 6.16. Variables for Ports That Use Apache

USE_APACHE	The port requires Apache. Possible values: yes (gets any version), 22, 24, 22-24, 22+, etc. The default APACHE version is 22. More details are available in ports/Mk/bsd.apache.mk and at <a href="http://wiki.freebsd.org/Apache/">wiki.freebsd.org/Apache/</a> .
APXS	Full path to the apxs binary. Can be overridden in your port.
HTTPD	Full path to the httpd binary. Can be overridden in your port.
APACHE_VERSION	The version of present Apache installation (read-only variable). This variable is only available after inclusion of bsd.port.pre.mk. Possible values: 22, 24.
APACHEMODDIR	Directory for Apache modules. This variable is automatically expanded in pkg-plist.
APACHEINCLUDEDIR	Directory for Apache headers. This variable is automatically expanded in pkg-plist.
APACHEETCDIR	Directory for Apache configuration files. This variable is automatically expanded in pkg-plist.

Table 6.17. Useful Variables for Porting Apache Modules

MODULENAME	Name of the module. Default value is PORT-NAME. Example: mod_hello
SHORTMODNAME	Short name of the module. Automatically derived from MODULENAME, but can be overridden. Example: hello
AP_FAST_BUILD	Use apxs to compile and install the module.
AP_GENPLIST	Also automatically creates a pkg-plist.

AP_INC	Adds a directory to a header search path during compilation.
AP_LIB	Adds a directory to a library search path during compilation.
AP_EXTRAS	Additional flags to pass to <code>apxs</code> .

### 6.14.2. Web Applications

Web applications should be installed into `PREFIX/www/appname`. For your convenience, this path is available both in `Makefile` and in `pkg-plist` as `WWWDIR`, and the path relative to `PREFIX` is available in `Makefile` as `WWWDIR_REL`.

The user and group of web server process are available as `WWWOWN` and `WWWGRP`, in case you need to change the ownership of some files. The default values of both are `www`. If you want different values for your port, use `WWWOWN?= myuser` notation, to allow user to override it easily.

Do not depend on Apache unless the web app explicitly needs Apache. Respect that users may wish to run your web app on different web server than Apache.

### 6.14.3. PHP

Table 6.18. Variables for Ports That Use PHP

USE_PHP	The port requires PHP. The value <code>yes</code> adds a dependency on PHP. The list of required PHP extensions can be specified instead. Example: <code>pcre xml gettext</code>
DEFAULT_PHP_VER	Selects which major version of PHP will be installed as a dependency when no PHP is installed yet. Default is 5. Possible values: 4, 5
IGNORE_WITH_PHP	The port does not work with PHP of the given version. Possible values: 4, 5
USE_PHPIZE	The port will be built as a PHP extension.
USE_PHPEXT	The port will be treated as a PHP extension, including installation and registration in the extension registry.
USE_PHP_BUILD	Set PHP as a build dependency.
WANT_PHP_CLI	Want the CLI (command line) version of PHP.
WANT_PHP_CGI	Want the CGI version of PHP.

WANT_PHP_MOD	Want the Apache module version of PHP.
WANT_PHP_SCR	Want the CLI or the CGI version of PHP.
WANT_PHP_WEB	Want the Apache module or the CGI version of PHP.

#### 6.14.4. PEAR Modules

Porting PEAR modules is a very simple process.

Use the variables FILES, TESTS, DATA, SQLS, SCRIPTFILES, DOCS and EXAMPLES to list the files you want to install. All listed files will be automatically installed into the appropriate locations and added to pkg-plist.

Include `${PORTSDIR}/devel/pear/bsd.pear.mk` on the last line of the Makefile.

#### Example 6.8. Example Makefile for PEAR Class

```

PORTNAME=      Date
PORTVERSION= 1.4.3
CATEGORIES= devel www pear

MAINTAINER= example@domain.com
COMMENT= PEAR Date and Time Zone Classes

BUILD_DEPENDS= ${PEARDIR}/PEAR.php:${PORTSDIR}/devel/pear-PEAR
RUN_DEPENDS:= ${BUILD_DEPENDS}

FILES= Date.php Date/Calc.php Date/Human.php Date/Span.php
\
Date/TimeZone.php
TESTS= test_calc.php test_date_methods_span.php testunit.php
\
testunit_date.php testunit_date_span.php wknotest.txt \
bug674.php bug727_1.php bug727_2.php bug727_3.php \
bug727_4.php bug967.php weeksinmonth_4_monday.txt \
weeksinmonth_4_sunday.txt weeksinmonth_rdm_monday.txt \
weeksinmonth_rdm_sunday.txt
DOCS= TODO
_DOCSDIR= .

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>
.include "${PORTSDIR}/devel/pear/bsd.pear.mk"
.include <bsd.port.post.mk>

```

## 6.15. Using Python

The Ports Collection supports parallel installation of multiple Python versions. Ports should make sure to use a correct `python` interpreter, according to the user-settable `PYTHON_VERSION` variable. Most prominently, this means replacing the path to `python` executable in scripts with the value of `PYTHON_CMD` variable.

Ports that install files under `PYTHON_SITELIBDIR` should use the `pyXY-` package name prefix, so their package name embeds the version of Python they are installed into.

```
PKGNAMEPREFIX= ${PYTHON_PKGNAMEPREFIX}
```

Table 6.19. Most Useful Variables for Ports That Use Python

<code>USE_PYTHON</code>	The port needs Python. Minimal required version can be specified with values such as 2.6+. Version ranges can also be specified, by separating two version numbers with a dash, e.g.: 2.6-2.7
<code>USE_PYDISTUTILS</code>	Use Python distutils for configuring, compiling and installing. This is required when the port comes with <code>setup.py</code> . This overrides the <code>do-build</code> and <code>do-install</code> targets and may also override <code>do-configure</code> if <code>GNU_CONFIGURE</code> is not defined.
<code>PYTHON_PKGNAMEPREFIX</code>	Used as a <code>PKGNAMEPREFIX</code> to distinguish packages for different Python versions. Example: <code>py24-</code>
<code>PYTHON_SITELIBDIR</code>	Location of the site-packages tree, that contains installation path of Python (usually <code>LOCALBASE</code> ). The <code>PYTHON_SITELIBDIR</code> variable can be very useful when installing Python modules.
<code>PYTHONPREFIX_SITELIBDIR</code>	The <code>PREFIX-clean</code> variant of <code>PYTHON_SITELIBDIR</code> . Always use <code>%PYTHON_SITELIBDIR%</code> in <code>pkg-plist</code> when possible. The default value of <code>%PYTHON_SITELIBDIR%</code> is <code>lib/python%PYTHON_VERSION%/site-packages</code>
<code>PYTHON_CMD</code>	Python interpreter command line, including version number.
<code>PYNUMERIC</code>	Dependency line for numeric extension.

PYNUMPY	Dependency line for the new numeric extension, numpy. (PYNUMERIC is deprecated by upstream vendor).
PYXML	Dependency line for XML extension (not needed for Python 2.0 and higher as it is also in base distribution).

A complete list of available variables can be found in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.python.mk`.

Some Python applications claim to have `DESTDIR` support (which would be required for staging) but it is broken (Mailman up to 2.1.16, for instance). This can be worked around by recompiling the scripts. This can be done, for example, in the `post-build` target. Assuming the Python scripts are supposed to reside in `PYTHONPREFIX_SITELIBDIR` after installation, this solution can be applied:

```
(cd ${STAGEDIR}${PREFIX} \
  && ${PYTHON_CMD} ${PYTHON_LIBDIR}/compileall.py \
  -d ${PREFIX} -f ${PYTHONPREFIX_SITELIBDIR:S:${PREFIX}/;;})
```

This recompiles the sources with a path relative to the stage directory, and prepends the value of `PREFIX` to the file name recorded in the byte-compiled output file by `-d`. `-f` is required to force recompilation, and the `:S:${PREFIX}/;;` strips prefixes from the value of the `PYTHONPREFIX_SITELIBDIR` variable to make it relative to `PREFIX`.

## 6.16. Using Tcl/Tk

The Ports Collection supports parallel installation of multiple Tcl/Tk versions. Ports should try to support at least the default Tcl/Tk version and higher with `USES=tcl`. It is possible to specify the desired version of `tcl` by appending `:xx`, e.g.: `USES=tcl:85`.

Table 6.20. The Most Useful Read-Only Variables for Ports That Use Tcl/Tk

TCL_VER	chosen major.minor version of Tcl
TCLSH	full path of the Tcl interpreter
TCL_LIBDIR	path of the Tcl libraries
TCL_INCLUDEDIR	path of the Tcl C header files
TK_VER	chosen major.minor version of Tk
WISH	full path of the Tk interpreter
TK_LIBDIR	path of the Tk libraries
TK_INCLUDEDIR	path of the Tk C header files

See the `USES=tcl` and `USES=tk` of [Chapter 15, Values of USES](#) for a full description of those variables. A complete list of those variables is available in `/usr/ports/Mk/Uses/tcl.mk`.



## 6.17. Using Emacs

This section is yet to be written.

## 6.18. Using Ruby

Table 6.21. Useful Variables for Ports That Use Ruby

Variable	Description
USE_RUBY	The port requires Ruby.
USE_RUBY_EXTCONF	The port uses <code>extconf.rb</code> to configure.
USE_RUBY_SETUP	The port uses <code>setup.rb</code> to configure.
RUBY_SETUP	Set to the alternative name of <code>setup.rb</code> . Common value is <code>install.rb</code> .

The following table shows the selected variables available to port authors via the ports infrastructure. These variables should be used to install files into their proper locations. Use them in `pkg-plist` as much as possible. These variables should not be redefined in the port.

Table 6.22. Selected Read-Only Variables for Ports That Use Ruby

Variable	Description	Example value
RUBY_PKGNAMEPREFIX	Used as a <code>PKGNAMEPREFIX</code> to distinguish packages for different Ruby versions.	<code>ruby19-</code>
RUBY_VERSION	Full version of Ruby in the form of <code>x.y.z[.p]</code> .	<code>1.9.3.484</code>
RUBY_SITELIBDIR	Architecture independent libraries installation path.	<code>/usr/local/lib/ruby/site_ruby/1.9</code>
RUBY_SITEARCHLIBDIR	Architecture dependent libraries installation path.	<code>/usr/local/lib/ruby/site_ruby/1.9/amd64-freebsd10</code>
RUBY_MOODOCDIR	Module documentation installation path.	<code>/usr/local/share/doc/ruby19/patsy</code>
RUBY_MODEXAMPLESDIR	Module examples installation path.	<code>/usr/local/share/examples/ruby19/patsy</code>

A complete list of available variables can be found in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.ruby.mk`.

## 6.19. Using SDL

The `USE_SDL` variable is used to autoconfigure the dependencies for ports which use an SDL based library like [devel/sdl12](#) and [graphics/sdl\\_image](#).

The following SDL libraries for version 1.2 are recognized at the moment:

- sdl: [devel/sdl12](#)
- console: [devel/sdl\\_console](#)
- gfx: [graphics/sdl\\_gfx](#)
- image: [graphics/sdl\\_image](#)
- mixer: [audio/sdl\\_mixer](#)
- mm: [devel/sdlmm](#)
- net: [net/sdl\\_net](#)
- pango: [x11-toolkits/sdl\\_pango](#)
- sound: [audio/sdl\\_sound](#)
- ttf: [graphics/sdl\\_ttf](#)

The following SDL libraries for version 2.0 are recognized at the moment:

- sdl: [devel/sdl20](#)
- gfx: [graphics/sdl2\\_gfx](#)
- image: [graphics/sdl2\\_image](#)
- mixer: [audio/sdl2\\_mixer](#)
- net: [net/sdl2\\_net](#)
- ttf: [graphics/sdl2\\_ttf](#)

Therefore, if a port has a dependency on [net/sdl\\_net](#) and [audio/sdl\\_mixer](#), the syntax will be:

```
USE_SDL= net mixer
```

The dependency [devel/sdl12](#), which is required by [net/sdl\\_net](#) and [audio/sdl\\_mixer](#), is automatically added as well.

If you use `USE_SDL` with entries using SDL 1.2, it will automatically:

- Add a dependency on `sdl12-config` to `BUILD_DEPENDS`
- Add the variable `SDL_CONFIG` to `CONFIGURE_ENV`
- Add the dependencies of the selected libraries to the `LIB_DEPENDS`

If you use `USE_SDL` with entries using SDL 2.0, it will automatically:

- Add a dependency on `sdl2-config` to `BUILD_DEPENDS`
- Add the variable `SDL2_CONFIG` to `CONFIGURE_ENV`
- Add the dependencies of the selected libraries to the `LIB_DEPENDS`

To check whether an SDL library is available, you can do it with the `WANT_SDL` variable:

```
WANT_SDL= yes

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if ${HAVE_SDL:Mmixer}!=" "
USE_SDL+= mixer
.endif

.include <bsd.port.post.mk>
```

## 6.20. Using wxWidgets

This section describes the status of the wxWidgets libraries in the ports tree and its integration with the ports system.

### 6.20.1. Introduction

There are many versions of the wxWidgets libraries which conflict between them (install files under the same name). In the ports tree this problem has been solved by installing each version under a different name using version number suffixes.

The obvious disadvantage of this is that each application has to be modified to find the expected version. Fortunately, most of the applications call the `wx-config` script to determine the necessary compiler and linker flags. The script is named differently for every available version. Majority of applications respect an environment variable, or accept a configure argument, to specify which `wx-config` script to call. Otherwise they have to be patched.

### 6.20.2. Version Selection

To make your port use a specific version of wxWidgets there are two variables available for defining (if only one is defined the other will be set to a default value):

Table 6.23. Variables to Select wxWidgets Versions

Variable	Description	Default value
USE_WX	List of versions the port can use	All available versions
USE_WX_NOT	List of versions the port can not use	None

The following is a list of available wxWidgets versions and the corresponding ports in the tree:

Table 6.24. Available wxWidgets Versions

Version	Port
2.4	<a href="#">x11-toolkits/wxgtk24</a>
2.6	<a href="#">x11-toolkits/wxgtk26</a>
2.8	<a href="#">x11-toolkits/wxgtk28</a>



### Note

The versions starting from 2.5 also come in Unicode version and are installed by a slave port named like the normal one plus a -unicode suffix, but this can be handled with variables (see [Section 6.20.4, “Unicode”](#)).

The variables in [Table 6.23, “Variables to Select wxWidgets Versions”](#) can be set to one or more of the following combinations separated by spaces:

Table 6.25. wxWidgets Version Specifications

Description	Example
Single version	2.4
Ascending range	2.4+
Descending range	2.6-
Full range (must be ascending)	2.4-2.6

There are also some variables to select the preferred versions from the available ones. They can be set to a list of versions, the first ones will have higher priority.

Table 6.26. Variables to Select Preferred wxWidgets Versions

Name	Designed for
WANT_WX_VER	the port
WITH_WX_VER	the user

### 6.20.3. Component Selection

There are other applications that, while not being wxWidgets libraries, are related to them. These applications can be specified in the `WX_COMPS` variable. The following components are available:

Table 6.27. Available wxWidgets Components

Name	Description	Version restriction
wx	main library	none
contrib	contributed libraries	none
python	wxPython (Python bindings)	2.4-2.6
mozilla	wxMozilla	2.4
svg	wxSVG	2.6

The dependency type can be selected for each component by adding a suffix separated by a semicolon. If not present then a default type will be used (see [Table 6.29, “Default wxWidgets Dependency Types”](#)). The following types are available:

Table 6.28. Available wxWidgets Dependency Types

Name	Description
build	Component is required for building, equivalent to <code>BUILD_DEPENDS</code>
run	Component is required for running, equivalent to <code>RUN_DEPENDS</code>
lib	Component is required for building and running, equivalent to <code>LIB_DEPENDS</code>

The default values for the components are detailed in the following table:

Table 6.29. Default wxWidgets Dependency Types

Component	Dependency type
wx	lib
contrib	lib

Component	Dependency type
python	run
mozilla	lib
svg	lib

### Example 6.9. Selecting wxWidgets Components

The following fragment corresponds to a port which uses wxWidgets version 2.4 and its contributed libraries.

```
USE_WX= 2.4
WX_COMPS= wx contrib
```

## 6.20.4. Unicode

The wxWidgets library supports Unicode since version 2.5. In the ports tree both versions are available and can be selected with the following variables:

Table 6.30. Variables to Select Unicode in wxWidgets Versions

Variable	Description	Designed for
WX_UNICODE	The port works <i>only</i> with the Unicode version	the port
WANT_UNICODE	The port works with both versions but prefers the Unicode one	the port
WITH_UNICODE	The port will use the Unicode version	the user
WITHOUT_UNICODE	The port will use the normal version if supported (when <code>WX_UNICODE</code> is not defined)	the user



## Warning

Do not use `WX_UNICODE` for ports that can use both Unicode and normal versions. If you want the port to use Unicode by default define `WANT_UNICODE` instead.

### 6.20.5. Detecting Installed Versions

To detect an installed version you have to define `WANT_WX`. If you do not set it to a specific version then the components will have a version suffix. The `HAVE_WX` variable will be filled after detection.

#### Example 6.10. Detecting Installed wxWidgets Versions and Components

The following fragment can be used in a port that uses wxWidgets if it is installed, or an option is selected.

```
WANT_WX= yes

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if defined(WITH_WX) || !empty(PORT_OPTIONS:MWX) || !empty(
(HAVE_WX:Mwx-2.4)
USE_WX= 2.4
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --enable-wx
.endif
```

The following fragment can be used in a port that enables wxPython support if it is installed or if an option is selected, in addition to wxWidgets, both version 2.6.

```
USE_WX= 2.6
WX_COMPS= wx
WANT_WX= 2.6

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if defined(WITH_WXPYTHON) || !empty(PORT_OPTIONS:MWXPYTHON)
|| !empty(HAVE_WX:Mpython)
WX_COMPS+= python
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --enable-wxpython
```

```
.endif
```

### 6.20.6. Defined Variables

The following variables are available in the port (after defining one from [Table 6.23, “Variables to Select wxWidgets Versions”](#)).

Table 6.31. Variables Defined for Ports That Use wxWidgets

Name	Description
WX_CONFIG	The path to the wxWidgets wx-config script (with different name)
WXRC_CMD	The path to the wxWidgets wxrc program (with different name)
WX_VERSION	The wxWidgets version that is going to be used (e.g., 2.6)
WX_UNICODE	If not defined but Unicode is going to be used then it will be defined

### 6.20.7. Processing in `bsd.port.pre.mk`

If you need to use the variables for running commands right after including `bsd.port.pre.mk` you need to define `WX_PREMK`.



#### Important

If you define `WX_PREMK`, then the version, dependencies, components and defined variables will not change if you modify the wxWidgets port variables *after* including `bsd.port.pre.mk`.

#### Example 6.11. Using wxWidgets Variables in Commands

The following fragment illustrates the use of `WX_PREMK` by running the `wx-config` script to obtain the full version string, assign it to a variable and pass it to the program.

```
USE_WX= 2.4
```



```
WX_PREMK= yes

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if exists(${WX_CONFIG})
VER_STR!= ${WX_CONFIG} --release

PLIST_SUB+= VERSION="${VER_STR}"
.endif
```



### Note

The wxWidgets variables can be safely used in commands when they are inside targets without the need of `WX_PREMK`.

## 6.20.8. Additional configure Arguments

Some GNU configure scripts can not find wxWidgets with just the `WX_CONFIG` environment variable set, requiring additional arguments. The `WX_CONF_ARGS` variable can be used to provide them.

Table 6.32. Legal Values for `WX_CONF_ARGS`

Possible value	Resulting argument
absolute	<code>--with-wx-config=\${WX_CONFIG}</code>
relative	<code>--with-wx=\${LOCALBASE}</code> <code>--with-wx-config=\${WX_CONFIG:T}</code>

## 6.21. Using Lua

This section describes the status of the Lua libraries in the ports tree and its integration with the ports system.

### 6.21.1. Introduction

There are many versions of the Lua libraries and corresponding interpreters, which conflict between them (install files under the same name). In the ports tree this problem has been solved by installing each version under a different name using version number suffixes.

The obvious disadvantage of this is that each application has to be modified to find the expected version. But it can be solved by adding some additional flags to the compiler and linker.

### 6.21.2. Version Selection

A port using Lua only needs to have the following line:

```
USES= lua
```

If a specific version of Lua is needed, instructions on how to select it are given in the `USES=lua` part of [Chapter 15, Values of USES](#).

### 6.21.3. Defined Variables

The following variables are available in the port.

Table 6.33. Variables Defined for Ports That Use Lua

Name	Description
LUA_VER	The Lua version that is going to be used (e.g., 5.1)
LUA_VER_STR	The Lua version without the dots (e.g., 51)
LUA_PREFIX	The prefix where Lua (and components) is installed
LUA_SUBDIR	The directory under <code>\${PREFIX}/bin</code> , <code>\${PREFIX}/share</code> and <code>\${PREFIX}/lib</code> where Lua is installed
LUA_INCDIR	The directory where Lua and tolua header files are installed
LUA_LIBDIR	The directory where Lua and tolua libraries are installed
LUA_MODLIBDIR	The directory where Lua module libraries (.so) are installed
LUA_MODSHAREDIR	The directory where Lua modules (.lua) are installed
LUA_PKGNAMEPREFIX	The package name prefix used by Lua modules
LUA_CMD	The path to the Lua interpreter
LUAC_CMD	The path to the Lua compiler

## 6.22. Using `iconv`

After 2013-10-08 (254273), FreeBSD 10-CURRENT and newer versions have a native `iconv` in the operating system. On earlier versions, `converters/libiconv` was used as a dependency.

For software that needs `iconv`, define `USES=iconv`. FreeBSD versions before 10-CURRENT on 2013-08-13 (254273) do not have a native `iconv`. On these earlier versions, a dependency on `converters/libiconv` will be added automatically.

When a port defines `USES=iconv`, these variables will be available:

Variable name	Purpose	Value before FreeBSD 10-CURRENT 254273 (2013-08-13)	Value after FreeBSD 10-CURRENT 254273 (2013-08-13)
<code>ICONV_CMD</code>	Directory where the <code>iconv</code> binary resides	<code>\${LOCALBASE}/bin/iconv</code>	<code>/usr/bin/iconv</code>
<code>ICONV_LIB</code>	<code>ld</code> argument to link to <code>libiconv</code> (if needed)	<code>-liconv</code>	(empty)
<code>ICONV_PREFIX</code>	Directory where the <code>iconv</code> implementation resides (useful for configure scripts)	<code>\${LOCALBASE}</code>	<code>/usr</code>
<code>ICONV_CONFIGURE_ARGS</code>	Preconstructed configure argument for configure scripts	<code>--with-libiconv-prefix=\${LOCALBASE}</code>	(empty)
<code>ICONV_CONFIGURE_BASE</code>	Preconstructed configure argument for configure scripts	<code>--with-libiconv=\${LOCALBASE}</code>	(empty)

These two examples automatically populate the variables with the correct value for systems using `converters/libiconv` or the native `iconv` respectively:

### Example 6.12. Simple `iconv` Usage

```
USES= iconv
LDFLAGS+= -L${LOCALBASE}/lib ${ICONV_LIB}
```

### Example 6.13. iconv Usage with `configure`

```
USES= iconv
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=${ICONV_CONFIGURE_ARG}
```

As shown above, `ICONV_LIB` is empty when a native `iconv` is present. This can be used to detect the native `iconv` and respond appropriately.

Sometimes a program has an `ld` argument or search path hardcoded in a Makefile or configure script. This approach can be used to solve that problem:

### Example 6.14. Fixing Hardcoded `-liconv`

```
USES= iconv

post-patch:
  @${REINPLACE_CMD} -e 's/-liconv/${ICONV_LIB}/' ${WRKSRC}/
  Makefile
```

In some cases it is necessary to set alternate values or perform operations depending on whether there is a native `iconv`. `bsd.port.pre.mk` must be included before testing the value of `ICONV_LIB`:

### Example 6.15. Checking for Native `iconv` Availability

```
USES= iconv

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

post-patch:
  .if empty(ICONV_LIB)
    # native iconv detected
    @${REINPLACE_CMD} -e 's|iconv||' ${WRKSRC}/Config.sh
  .endif

.include <bsd.port.post.mk>
```

## 6.23. Using Xfce

The `USE_XFCE` variable is used to autoconfigure the dependencies for ports which use an Xfce based library or application like [x11-toolkits/libxfce4gui](#) and [x11-wm/xfce4-panel](#).

The following Xfce libraries and applications are recognized at the moment:

- libexo: [x11/libexo](#)
- libgui: [x11-toolkits/libxfce4gui](#)
- libutil: [x11/libxfce4util](#)
- libmcs: [x11/libxfce4mcs](#)
- mcsmanager: [sysutils/xfce4-mcs-manager](#)
- panel: [x11-wm/xfce4-panel](#)
- thunar: [x11-fm/thunar](#)
- wm: [x11-wm/xfce4-wm](#)
- xfdev: [dev/xfce4-dev-tools](#)

The following additional parameters are recognized:

- configenv: Use this if your port requires a special modified `CONFIGURE_ENV` to find its required libraries.

```
-I${LOCALBASE}/include -L${LOCALBASE}/lib
```

gets added to `CPPFLAGS` to `CONFIGURE_ENV` .

Therefore, if a port has a dependency on [sysutils/xfce4-mcs-manager](#) and requires the special `CPPFLAGS` in its configure environment, the syntax will be:

```
USE_XFCE= mcsmanager configenv
```

## 6.24. Using Mozilla

Table 6.34. Variables for Ports That Use Mozilla

<code>USE_GECKO</code>	Gecko backend the port can handle. Possible values: <code>libxul</code> ( <code>libxul.so</code> ), <code>seamonkey</code> ( <code>libgtkembedmoz.so</code> , deprecated, should not be used any more).
------------------------	---

USE_FIREFOX	The port requires Firefox as a runtime dependency. Possible values: yes (get default version), 40, 36, 35. Default dependency is on version 40.
USE_FIREFOX_BUILD	The port requires Firefox as a build-time dependency. Possible values: see USE_FIREFOX. This automatically sets USE_FIREFOX and assigns the same value.
USE_SEAMONKEY	The port requires SeaMonkey as a runtime dependency. Possible values: yes (get default version), 20, 11 (deprecated, should not be used any more). Default dependency is on version 20.
USE_SEAMONKEY_BUILD	The port requires SeaMonkey as a build-time dependency. Possible values: see USE_SEAMONKEY. This automatically sets USE_SEAMONKEY and assigns the same value.
USE_THUNDERBIRD	The port requires Thunderbird as a runtime dependency. Possible values: yes (get default version), 31, 30 (deprecated, should not be used any more). Default dependency is on version 31.
USE_THUNDERBIRD_BUILD	The port requires Thunderbird as a buildtime dependency. Possible values: see USE_THUNDERBIRD. This automatically sets USE_THUNDERBIRD and assigns the same value.

A complete list of available variables can be found in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.gecko.mk`.

## 6.25. Using Databases

Table 6.35. Variables for Ports Using Databases

Variable	Means
USE_BDB	If variable is set to yes, add dependency on <a href="#">databases/db41</a> port. The variable may also be set to values: 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 46, 47, 48, or 51. You can declare a range of acceptable values, <code>USE_BDB=42+</code> will find the high-

Variable	Means
	est installed version, and fall back to 42 if nothing else is installed.
USE_MYSQL	If the variable is set to yes, add a dependency on the <a href="#">databases/mysql55-client</a> port. An associated variable, WANT_MYSQL_VER , may be set to values such as 323, 40, 41, 50, 51, 52, 55, or 60.
USE_PGSQL	If set to yes, add dependency on <a href="#">databases/postgresql90-client</a> port. An associated variable, WANT_PGSQL_VER , may be set to values such as 83, 84, 90, 91 or 92. You can declare a minimum or maximum value; WANT_PGSQL_VER = 90+ will cause the port to depend on a minimum version of 9.0.
USE_SQLITE	If variable is set to yes, add dependency on <a href="#">databases/sqlite3</a> port. The variable may also be set to values: 3, 2.

More details are available in [bsd.database.mk](#).

## 6.26. Starting and Stopping Services (rc Scripts)

rc.d scripts are used to start services on system startup, and to give administrators a standard way of stopping, starting and restarting the service. Ports integrate into the system rc.d framework. Details on its usage can be found in [the rc.d Handbook chapter](#). Detailed explanation of the available commands is provided in [rc\(8\)](#) and [rc.subr\(8\)](#). Finally, there is [an article](#) on practical aspects of rc.d scripting.

One or more rc.d scripts can be installed:

```
USE_RC_SUBR= doormand
```

Scripts must be placed in the files subdirectory and a .in suffix must be added to their filename. Standard SUB\_LIST expansions will be used for this file. Use of the %%PREFIX% and %%LOCALBASE%% expansions is strongly encouraged as well. More on SUB\_LIST in [the relevant section](#).

As of FreeBSD 6.1-RELEASE, local rc.d scripts (including those installed by ports) are included in the overall [rcorder\(8\)](#) of the base system.

Example simple rc.d script:

```
#!/bin/sh
```

```
# $FreeBSD$
#
# PROVIDE: doormand
# REQUIRE: LOGIN
# KEYWORD: shutdown
#
# Add the following lines to /etc/rc.conf.local or /etc/rc.conf
# to enable this service:
#
# doormand_enable (bool): Set to NO by default.
#   Set it to YES to enable doormand.
# doormand_config (path): Set to %%PREFIX%%/etc/doormand/doormand.cf
#   by default.

. /etc/rc.subr

name=doormand
rcvar=doormand_enable

load_rc_config $name

: ${doormand_enable:=NO}
: ${doormand_config=%%PREFIX%%/etc/doormand/doormand.cf}

command=%%PREFIX%%/sbin/${name}
pidfile=/var/run/${name}.pid

command_args="-p $pidfile -f $doormand_config"

run_rc_command "$1"
```

Unless there is a good reason to start the service earlier all ports scripts should use

```
REQUIRE: LOGIN
```

If the service runs as a particular user (other than root) this is mandatory.

```
KEYWORD: shutdown
```

is included in the script above because the mythical port we are using as an example starts a service, and should be shut down cleanly when the system shuts down. If the script is not starting a persistent service this is not necessary.

For optional configuration elements the "=" style of default variable assignment is preferable to the ":=" style here, since the former sets a default value only if the variable is unset, and the latter sets one if the variable is unset or null. A user might very well include something like

```
doormand_flags=""
```



in their `rc.conf.local` file, and a variable substitution using `":="` would inappropriately override the user's intention. The `_enable` variable is not optional, and should use the `":"` for the default.

### 6.26.1. Pre-Commit Checklist

Before contributing a port with an `rc.d` script, and more importantly, before committing one, please consult the following checklist to be sure that it is ready.

The [devel/rclint](#) port can check for most of these, but it is not a substitute for proper review.

1. If this is a new file, does it have `.sh` in the file name? If so that should be changed to just `file.in` since `rc.d` files may not end with that extension.
2. Does the file have a `$FreeBSD$` tag?
3. Do the name of the file (minus `.in`), the `PROVIDE` line, and `$name` all match? The file name matching `PROVIDE` makes debugging easier, especially for [rcorder\(8\)](#) issues. Matching the file name and `$name` makes it easier to figure out which variables are relevant in `rc.conf[.local]`. The latter is also what you might call “policy” for all new scripts, including those in the base system.
4. Is the `REQUIRE` line set to `LOGIN`? This is mandatory for scripts that run as a non-root user. If it runs as root, is there a good reason for it to run prior to `LOGIN`? If not, it should run there so that we can loosely group local scripts to a point in [rcorder\(8\)](#) after most everything in the base is already running.
5. Does the script start a persistent service? If so, it should have `KEYWORD: shutdown`.
6. Make sure there is no `KEYWORD: FreeBSD` present. This has not been necessary or desirable for years. It is also an indication that the new script was copy/pasted from an old script, so extra caution should be given to the review.
7. If the script uses an interpreted language like `perl`, `python`, or `ruby`, make certain that `command_interpreter` is set appropriately, e.g., for Perl, by adding `PERL=${PERL}` to `SUB_LIST` and using `%%PERL%%`. Otherwise,

```
# service name stop
```

will probably not work properly. See [service\(8\)](#) for more information.

8. Have all occurrences of `/usr/local` been replaced with `%%PREFIX%%`?
9. Do the default variable assignments come after `load_rc_config` ?
10. Are there default assignments to empty strings? They should be removed, but double-check that the option is documented in the comments at the top of the file.

11. Are things that are set in variables actually used in the script?
12. Are options listed in the default `name_flags` things that are actually mandatory? If so, they should be in `command_args` . The `-d` option is a red flag (pardon the pun) here, since it is usually the option to “daemonize” the process, and therefore is actually mandatory.
13. The `name_flags` variable should never be included in `command_args` (and vice versa, although that error is less common).
14. Does the script execute any code unconditionally? This is frowned on. Usually these things can/should be dealt with through a `start_precmd` .
15. All boolean tests should utilize the `checkyesno` function. No hand-rolled tests for `[Yy][Ee][Ss]` , etc.
16. If there is a loop (for example, waiting for something to start) does it have a counter to terminate the loop? We do not want the boot to be stuck forever if there is an error.
17. Does the script create files or directories that need specific permissions, for example, a `pid` file that needs to be owned by the user that runs the process? Rather than the traditional `touch(1)/chown(8)/chmod(1)` routine, consider using `install(1)` with the proper command line arguments to do the whole procedure with one step.

## 6.27. Adding Users and Groups

Some ports require a certain user to be on the installed system. Choose a free UID from 50 to 999 and register it either in `ports/UIDs` (for users) or in `ports/GIDs` (for groups). Make sure you do not use a UID already used by the system or other ports.

Please include a patch against these two files when you require a new user or group to be created for your port.

Then you can use `USERS` and `GROUPS` variables in your `Makefile`, and the user will be automatically created when installing the port.

```
USERS= pulse
GROUPS= pulse pulse-access pulse-rt
```

The current list of reserved UIDs and GIDs can be found in `ports/UIDs` and `ports/GIDs` .

## 6.28. Ports That Rely on Kernel Sources

Some ports (such as kernel loadable modules) need the kernel source files so that the port can compile. Here is the correct way to determine if the user has them installed:

```
USES= kmod
```

Apart from this check, the `kmod` feature takes care of most items that these ports need to take into account.



# Chapter 7. Advanced pkg-plist Practices

## 7.1. Changing pkg-plist Based on Make Variables

Some ports, particularly the p5- ports, need to change their pkg-plist depending on what options they are configured with (or version of perl, in the case of p5- ports). To make this easy, any instances in the pkg-plist of `%%OSREL%%`, `%%PERL_VER%%`, and `%%PERL_VERSION%%` will be substituted for appropriately. The value of `%%OSREL%%` is the numeric revision of the operating system (e.g., 4.9). `%%PERL_VERSION%%` and `%%PERL_VER%%` is the full version number of perl (e.g., 5.8.9). Several other `%%VARS%%` related to port's documentation files are described in [the relevant section](#).

If you need to make other substitutions, you can set the `PLIST_SUB` variable with a list of `VAR=VALUE` pairs and instances of `%%VAR%%` will be substituted with `VALUE` in the pkg-plist.

For instance, if you have a port that installs many files in a version-specific subdirectory, you can put something like

```
OCTAVE_VERSION= 2.0.13
PLIST_SUB= OCTAVE_VERSION=${OCTAVE_VERSION}
```

in the Makefile and use `%%OCTAVE_VERSION%%` wherever the version shows up in pkg-plist. That way, when you upgrade the port, you will not have to change dozens (or in some cases, hundreds) of lines in the pkg-plist.

If your port installs files conditionally on the options set in the port, the usual way of handling it is prefixing the pkg-plist lines with a `%%OPT%%` for lines needed when the option is enabled, or `%%NO_OPT%%` when the option is disabled, and adding `OPTIONS_SUB=yes` to the Makefile. See [Section 5.12.3.1](#), “`OPTIONS_SUB`” for more information.

For instance, if there are files that are only installed when the X11 option is enabled, and the Makefile has:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= X11
OPTIONS_SUB= yes
```

In the pkg-plist file, put `%%X11%%` in front of the lines only being installed when the option is enabled, like this :

```
%%X11%%bin/foo-gui
```

This substitution will be done between the `pre-install` and `do-install` targets, by reading from `PLIST` and writing to `TMPPLIST` (default: `WRKDIR/.PLIST.mktmp`). So if your port builds `PLIST` on the fly, do so in or before `pre-install`. Also, if your port needs to edit the resulting file, do so in `post-install` to a file named `TMPPLIST`.

Another way of modifying a port's packing list is based on setting the variables `PLIST_FILES`, `PLIST_DIRS`, and `PLIST_DIRSTRY`. The value of each variable is regarded as a list of pathnames to write to `TMPPLIST` along with `PLIST` contents. Names listed in `PLIST_FILES`, `PLIST_DIRS`, and `PLIST_DIRSTRY` are subject to `%%VAR%%` substitution as described above. Except for that, names from `PLIST_FILES` will appear in the final packing list unchanged, while `@dirrm` and `@dirrmtry` will be prepended to names from `PLIST_DIRS` and `PLIST_DIRSTRY`, respectively. To take effect, `PLIST_FILES`, `PLIST_DIRS`, and `PLIST_DIRSTRY` must be set before `TMPPLIST` is written, i.e., in `pre-install` or earlier.

From time to time, the `OPTIONS_SUB` construct is not enough, in those cases, adding a specific `TAG` to the `PLIST_SUB` variable inside the `Makefile` with a special value of `@comment`, makes package tools to ignore the line. For instance, if some files are only installed when the `X11` option is on and the architecture is `i386`:

```
.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MX11} && ${ARCH} == "i386"
PLIST_SUB+= X11I386=""
.else
PLIST_SUB+= X11I386="@comment "
.endif
```

## 7.2. Empty Directories

### 7.2.1. Cleaning Up Empty Directories

When being de-installed, A port has to remove empty directories it created. This is usually accomplished by adding `@dirrm` lines for all directories that are specifically created by the port. You need to delete subdirectories before you can delete parent directories.

```
:
lib/X11/oneko/pixmaps/cat.xpm
lib/X11/oneko/sounds/cat.au
:
@dirrm lib/X11/oneko/pixmaps
@dirrm lib/X11/oneko/sounds
@dirrm lib/X11/oneko
```

However, sometimes `@dirrm` will give you errors because other ports share the same directory. You can use `@dirrmtry` to remove only empty directories without warning.

```
@dirrmtry share/doc/gimp
```

This will neither print any error messages nor cause `pkg delete` (see [pkg-delete\(8\)](#)) to exit abnormally even if `${PREFIX}/share/doc/gimp` is not empty due to other ports installing some files in there.

### 7.2.2. Creating Empty Directories

Empty directories created during port installation need special attention. They will not get created when installing the package, because packages only store the files, and both `pkg add` and `pkg install` creates directories for them as needed. To make sure the empty directory is created when installing the package, add this line to `pkg-plist` above the corresponding `@dirrm` line:

```
@exec mkdir -p %D/share/foo/templates
```

## 7.3. Configuration Files

If your port installs configuration files to `PREFIX/etc` (or elsewhere) do *not* simply list them in the `pkg-plist`. That will cause `pkg delete` to remove the files carefully edited by the user, and a re-installation will wipe them out.

Instead, install sample file(s) as *filename.sample*, and for each sample file, add this line to your `pkg-plist`.

```
@sample etc/orbit.conf.sample
```

If there is a very good reason not to install a working configuration file by default, only list the sample filename in `pkg-plist`, without the `@sample` part, and add a [message](#) pointing out that the user must copy and edit the file before the software will work.



#### Tip

When a port installs its configuration in a subdirectory of `${PREFIX}/etc`, it should be in `ETCDIR`, which defaults to `${PREFIX}/etc/${PORTNAME}`, it can be overridden in the ports `Makefile` if there is a convention for the port to use some other directory. The `%ETCDIR%` macro should be used in its stead in the `pkg-plist` file.



#### Note

The sample configuration files should always have the `.sample` suffix. If for some historical reason you cannot use the standard suffix, you can still use this construct:

```
@unexec if cmp -s %D/etc/orbit.conf-dist %D/etc/
orbit.conf; then rm -f %D/etc/orbit.conf; fi
etc/orbit.conf-dist
@exec if [ ! -f %D/etc/orbit.conf -] -; then cp -p u
%D/%F %B/orbit.conf; fi
```

The order of these lines is important. On deinstallation, the sample file is compared to the actual configuration file. If these files are identical, no changes have been made by the user and the actual file can be safely deleted. Because the sample file must still exist for the comparison, the `@unexec` line comes before the sample configuration file name. On installation, if an actual configuration file is not already present, the sample file is copied to the actual file. The sample file must be present before it can be copied, so the `@exec` line comes after the sample configuration file name.

To debug any issues, temporarily remove the `-s` flag to `cmp(1)` for more output.

See [pkg-create\(8\)](#) for more information on `%D` and related substitution markers.

## 7.4. Dynamic Versus Static Package List

A *static package list* is a package list which is available in the Ports Collection either as a `pkg-plist` file (with or without variable substitution), or embedded into the `Makefile` via `PLIST_FILES`, `PLIST_DIRS`, and `PLIST_DIRSTRY`. Even if the contents are auto-generated by a tool or a target in the `Makefile` *before* the inclusion into the Ports Collection by a committer (e.g., using `make makeplist`), this is still considered a static list, since it is possible to examine it without having to download or compile the distfile.

A *dynamic package list* is a package list which is generated at the time the port is compiled based upon the files and directories which are installed. It is not possible to examine it before the source code of the ported application is downloaded and compiled, or after running a `make clean`.

While the use of dynamic package lists is not forbidden, maintainers should use static package lists wherever possible, as it enables users to [grep\(1\)](#) through available ports to discover, for example, which port installs a certain file. Dynamic lists should be primarily used for complex ports where the package list changes drastically based upon optional features of the port (and thus maintaining a static package list is infeasible), or ports which change the package list based upon the version of dependent software used (e.g., ports which generate docs with Javadoc).



## 7.5. Automated Package List Creation

First, make sure the port is almost complete, with only `pkg-plist` missing. Running `makeplist` will show what should be put in `pkg-plist`. The output of `makeplist` must be double checked for correctness as it tries to automatically guess a few things, and can get it wrong.

User configuration files should be installed as `filename.sample`, as it is described in [Section 7.3, “Configuration Files”](#). The `info/dir` file should not be listed and appropriate `install-info` lines should be added as noted in the [info files](#) section. Any libraries installed by the port should be listed as specified in the [shared libraries](#) section.

## 7.6. Expanding Package List with Keywords

### 7.6.1. @fc directory

Add a `@dirrmtry` entry for the directory passed as an argument, and run `fc-cache -s` on that directory after installation and deinstallation.

### 7.6.2. @fcfontsdir directory

Add a `@dirrmtry` entry for the directory passed as an argument, and run `fc-cache -s`, `mkfontscale` and `mkfontdir` on that directory after installation and deinstallation. Additionally, on deinstallation, it removes the `fonts.scale` and `fonts.dir` cache files if they are empty.

### 7.6.3. @fontsdir directory

Add a `@dirrmtry` entry for the directory passed as an argument, and run `mkfontscale` and `mkfontdir` on that directory after installation and deinstallation. Additionally, on deinstallation, it removes the `fonts.scale` and `fonts.dir` cache files if they are empty.

### 7.6.4. @info file

Add the file passed as argument to the plist, and updates the info document index on installation and deinstallation. Additionally, it removes the index if empty on deinstallation.

### 7.6.5. @sample file

Add the file passed as argument to the plist.

On installation, check for a “real” file with just the base name (the name without the `.sample` extension). If the real file is not found, copy the sample file to the base file name. On deinstallation, remove the configuration file if it has not been modified. See [Section 7.3, “Configuration Files”](#) for more information.

### 7.6.6. @shell file

Add the file passed as argument to the plist.

On installation, add the full path to *file* to `/etc/shells`, while making sure it is not added twice. On deinstallation, remove it from `/etc/shells`.

### 7.6.7. Base Keywords

There are a few historic keywords that are hardcoded, and documented in [pkg-create\(8\)](#). For the sake of completeness, they are also documented here.

#### 7.6.7.1. @cwd [directory]

Set the internal directory pointer to point to directory. All subsequent filenames are assumed relative to this directory.

#### 7.6.7.2. @exec command

Execute *command* as part of the unpacking process. If command contains any of the following sequences somewhere in it, they are expanded inline. For the following examples, assume that @cwd is set to `/usr/local` and the last extracted file was `bin/emacs`.

%F

Expand to the last filename extracted (as specified). In the example case `bin/emacs`.

%D

Expand to the current directory prefix, as set with @cwd. In the example case `/usr/local`.

%B

Expand to the basename of the fully qualified filename, that is, the current directory prefix plus the last filespec, minus the trailing filename. In the example case, that would be `/usr/local/bin`.

%f

Expand to the filename part of the fully qualified name, or the converse of %B. In the example case, `emacs`.

#### 7.6.7.3. @unexec command

Execute *command* as part of the deinstallation process. Expansion of special % sequences is the same as for @exec. This command is not executed during the package add, as @exec is, but rather when the package is deleted. This is useful for deleting links and other ancillary files that were created as a result of adding the package, but not directly known to the package's table of contents (and hence not automatically removable).

#### 7.6.7.4. **@mode mode**

Set default permission for all subsequently extracted files to *mode*. Format is the same as that used by `chmod(1)`. Use without an arg to set back to default permissions (mode of the file while being packed).

#### 7.6.7.5. **@owner user**

Set default ownership for all subsequent files to *user*. Use without an argument to set back to default ownership (root).

#### 7.6.7.6. **@group group**

Set default group ownership for all subsequent files to *group*. Use without an arg to set back to default group ownership (wheel).

#### 7.6.7.7. **@comment string**

This line is ignored when packing.

#### 7.6.7.8. **@dirrm directory**

Declare directory name to be deleted at deinstall time. By default, directories created by a package installation are not deleted when the package is deinstalled. This provides an explicit directory cleanup method. These directives should appear at the end of the package list. If the directory is not empty a warning is printed, and the directory is not removed.

#### 7.6.7.9. **@dirrmtry directory**

Declare directory name to be removed, as for `@dirrm`, but does not issue a warning if the directory cannot be removed.

### 7.6.8. Creating Your Own Keyword

Package list files can be extended by keywords that are defined in the `${PORTSDIR}/Keywords` directory. The settings for each keyword lives in a YAML file named *keyword*.yaml. The file must contain at least one of the following sections:

#### attributes

Changes the owner, group, or mode used by the keyword. Contains an associative array where the possible keys are `owner`, `group`, and `mode`. The values are, respectively, a user name, a group name, and a file mode. For example:

```
attributes: { owner: "games", group: "games", mode: 0555 }
```

#### action

Defines what happens to the keyword's parameter. Contains an array where the possible values are:

**setprefix**

Set the prefix for the next plist entries.

**dirmm**

Register a directory to be deleted on deinstall.

**dirmtry**

Register a directory to try and deleted on deinstall.

**file**

Register a file.

**setmode**

Set the mode for the next plist entries.

**setowner**

Set the owner for the next plist entries.

**setgroup**

Set the group for the next plist entries.

**comment**

Does not do anything, equivalent to not entering an action section.

**ignore\_next**

Ignore the next entry in the plist.

**pre-install, post-install, pre-deinstall, post-deinstall, pre-upgrade, post-upgrade**

These keywords contains a [sh\(1\)](#) script to be executed before or after installation, deinstallation, or upgrade of the package. In addition to the usual `@exec %foo` placeholders described in [Section 7.6.7.2](#), “[@exec command](#)”, there is a new one, `%@`, which represents the argument of the keyword.

### Example 7.1. Example of a `@dirmtryecho` Keyword

This keyword does two things, it adds a `@dirmtry directory` line to the packing list, and echoes the fact that the directory is removed when deinstalling the package.

```
actions: [dirmtry]
post-deinstall: |
    echo "Directory %D/%@ removed."
```

## Example 7.2. Real Life Example, How the **@sample** Could be Implemented

This keyword does three things, it adds the *filename* passed as an argument to **@sample** to the packing list, it adds to the **post-install** script instructions to copy the sample to the actual configuration file if it does not already exist, and it adds to the **post-deinstall** instructions to remove the configuration file if it has not been modified.

```
actions: [file]
post-install: |
    sample_file="%D/%@"
    target_file="${sample_file%.sample}"
    if ! [ -f "${target_file}" - ]; then
        /bin/cp -p "${sample_file}" "${target_file}"
    fi
pre-deinstall: |
    sample_file="%D/%@"
    target_file="${sample_file%.sample}"
    if cmp -s "${target_file}" "${sample_file}"; then
        rm -f "${target_file}"
    fi
```



# Chapter 8. The pkg-\* Files

There are some tricks we have not mentioned yet about the pkg-\* files that come in handy sometimes.

## 8.1. pkg-message

If you need to display a message to the installer, you may place the message in `pkg-message`. This capability is often useful to display additional installation steps to be taken after a `pkg install` or to display licensing information.

When some lines about the build-time knobs or warnings have to be displayed, use `ECHO_MSG`. The `pkg-message` file is only for post-installation steps. Likewise, the distinction between `ECHO_MSG` and `ECHO_CMD` should be kept in mind. The former is for printing informational text to the screen, while the latter is for command pipelining:

```
update-etc-shells:
  @${ECHO_MSG} "updating /etc/shells"
  @${CP} /etc/shells /etc/shells.bak
  @( ${GREP} -v ${PREFIX}/bin/bash /etc/shells.bak; \
    ${ECHO_CMD} ${PREFIX}/bin/bash ) >/etc/shells
  @${RM} /etc/shells.bak
```



### Note

The `pkg-message` file does not need to be added to `pkg-plist`.

## 8.2. pkg-install

If your port needs to execute commands when the binary package is installed with `pkg add` or `pkg install` you can do this via the `pkg-install` script. This script will automatically be added to the package, and will be run twice by `pkg` the first time as `${SH} pkg-install ${PKGNAME} PRE-INSTALL` before the package is installed and the second time as `${SH} pkg-install ${PKGNAME} POST-INSTALL` after it has been installed. `$2` can be tested to determine which mode the script is being run in. The `PKG_PREFIX` environmental variable will be set to the package installation directory.

## 8.3. pkg-deinstall

This script executes when a package is removed.

This script will be run twice by `pkg delete`. The first time as `${SH} pkg-deinstall ${PKGNAME} DEINSTALL` before the port is de-installed and the second time as `${SH} pkg-deinstall ${PKGNAME} POST-DEINSTALL` after the port has been de-installed. `$2` can be tested to determine which mode the script is being run in. The `PKG_PREFIX` environmental variable will be set to the package installation directory.

## 8.4. Changing the Names of pkg-\* Files

All the names of `pkg-*` files are defined using variables so you can change them in your `Makefile` if need be. This is especially useful when you are sharing the same `pkg-*` files among several ports or have to write to one of the above files (see [writing to places other than WRKDIR](#) for why it is a bad idea to write directly into the `pkg-*` subdirectory).

Here is a list of variable names and their default values. (`PKGDIR` defaults to `${MASTER-DIR}`.)

Variable	Default value
<code>DESCR</code>	<code>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-descr</code>
<code>PLIST</code>	<code>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-plist</code>
<code>PKGINSTALL</code>	<code>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-install</code>
<code>PKGDEINSTALL</code>	<code>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-deinstall</code>
<code>PKGMESSAGE</code>	<code>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-message</code>

## 8.5. Making Use of SUB\_FILES and SUB\_LIST

The `SUB_FILES` and `SUB_LIST` variables are useful for dynamic values in port files, such as the installation `PREFIX` in `pkg-message`.

The `SUB_FILES` variable specifies a list of files to be automatically modified. Each *file* in the `SUB_FILES` list must have a corresponding *file.in* present in `FILESDIR`. A modified version will be created as `${WRKDIR}/file`. Files defined as a value of `USE_RC_SUBR` (or the deprecated `USE_RCORDER`) are automatically added to the `SUB_FILES`. For the files `pkg-message`, `pkg-install`, and `pkg-deinstall`, the corresponding `Makefile` variable is automatically set to point to the processed version.

The `SUB_LIST` variable is a list of `VAR=VALUE` pairs. For each pair `%%VAR%%` will get replaced with `VALUE` in each file listed in `SUB_FILES`. Several common pairs are automatically de-



defined: `PREFIX`, `LOCALBASE`, `DATADIR`, `DOCSDIR`, `EXAMPLESDIR`, `WWWDIR`, and `ETCDIR`. Any line beginning with `@comment` will be deleted from resulting files after a variable substitution.

The following example will replace `%%ARCH%%` with the system architecture in a `pkg-message`:

```
SUB_FILES= pkg-message
SUB_LIST= ARCH=${ARCH}
```

Note that for this example, the `pkg-message.in` file must exist in `FILESDIR`.

Example of a good `pkg-message.in` :

```
Now it is time to configure this package.
Copy %%PREFIX%%/share/examples/putsy/%%ARCH%%.conf into your home &
directory
as .putsy.conf and edit it.
```



# Chapter 9. Testing the Port

## 9.1. Running `make describe`

Several of the FreeBSD port maintenance tools, such as [portupgrade\(1\)](#), rely on a database called `/usr/ports/INDEX` which keeps track of such items as port dependencies. `INDEX` is created by the top-level `ports/Makefile` via `make index`, which descends into each port subdirectory and executes `make describe` there. Thus, if `make describe` fails in any port, no one can generate `INDEX`, and many people will quickly become unhappy.



### Note

It is important to be able to generate this file no matter what options are present in `make.conf`, so please avoid doing things such as using `.error` statements when (for instance) a dependency is not satisfied. (See [Section 12.16](#), “Avoid Use of the `.error` Construct”.)

If `make describe` produces a string rather than an error message, you are probably safe. See `bsd.port.mk` for the meaning of the string produced.

Also note that running a recent version of `portlint` (as specified in the next section) will cause `make describe` to be run automatically.

## 9.2. Portlint

Do check your work with [portlint](#) before you submit or commit it. `portlint` warns you about many common errors, both functional and stylistic. For a new (or repocopied) port, `portlint -A` is the most thorough; for an existing port, `portlint -C` is sufficient.

Since `portlint` uses heuristics to try to figure out errors, it can produce false positive warnings. In addition, occasionally something that is flagged as a problem really cannot be done in any other way due to limitations in the ports framework. When in doubt, the best thing to do is ask on [FreeBSD ports mailing list](#).

## 9.3. Port Tools

The [ports-mgmt/porttools](#) program is part of the Ports Collection.

`port` is the front-end script, which can help you simplify the testing job. Whenever you want to test a new port or update an existing one, you can use `port test` to test your port, including the [portlint](#) checking. This command also detects and lists any files that are not listed in `pkg-plist`. See the following example:

```
# port test /usr/ports/net/csup
```

## 9.4. PREFIX and DESTDIR

PREFIX determines where the port will be installed. It defaults to `/usr/local`, but can be set by the user to a custom path like `/opt`. Your port must respect the value of this variable.

DESTDIR, if set by the user, determines the complete alternative environment, usually a jail or an installed system mounted somewhere other than `/`. A port will actually install into `DESTDIR/PREFIX`, and register with the package database in `DESTDIR/var/db/pkg`. As DESTDIR is handled automatically by the ports infrastructure with [chroot\(8\)](#), you do not need any modifications or any extra care to write DESTDIR-compliant ports.

The value of PREFIX will be set to `LOCALBASE` (defaulting to `/usr/local`). If `USE_LINUX_PREFIX` is set, PREFIX will be `LINUXBASE` (defaulting to `/compat/linux`).

Avoiding hard-coded `/usr/local` paths in the source makes the port much more flexible and able to cater to the needs of other sites. Often, this can be accomplished by simply replacing occurrences of `/usr/local` in the port's various Makefiles with `${PREFIX}`. This variable is automatically passed down to every stage of the build and install processes.

Make sure your application is not installing things in `/usr/local` instead of PREFIX. A quick test for such hard-coded paths is:

```
# make clean; make package PREFIX=/var/tmp/`make -V PORTNAME`
```

If anything is installed outside of PREFIX, the package creation process will complain that it cannot find the files.

In addition, it is worth checking the same with the stage directory support (see [Section 6.1](#), “Staging”):

```
# make stage && make check-orphans && make package
```

These tests will not find hard-coded paths inside the port's files, nor will it verify that `LOCALBASE` is being used to correctly refer to files from other ports. The temporarily-installed port in `/var/tmp/`make -V PORTNAME`` should be tested for proper operation to make sure there are no problems with paths.

PREFIX should not be set explicitly in a port's Makefile. Users installing the port may have set PREFIX to a custom location, and the port should respect that setting.

Refer to programs and files from other ports with the variables mentioned above, not explicit pathnames. For instance, if your port requires a macro `PAGER` to have the full pathname of `less`, do not use a literal path of `/usr/local/bin/less`. Instead, use `${LOCALBASE}`:

```
-DPAGER=\ "${LOCALBASE}/bin/less\ "
```

The path with `LOCALBASE` is more likely to still work if the system administrator has moved the whole `/usr/local` tree somewhere else.

## 9.5. Tinderbox

If you are an avid ports contributor, you might want to take a look at Tinderbox. It is a powerful system for building and testing ports. You can install Tinderbox using [ports-mgmt/tinderbox](#) port. Be sure to read supplied documentation since the configuration is not trivial.

Visit the [Tinderbox website](#) for more details.

## 9.6. Poudriere

As a ports contributor, consider installing poudriere. It is a powerful system for building and testing ports. Poudriere can be installed with [ports-mgmt/poudriere](#).

Visit the [Poudriere website](#) for more details.



# Chapter 10. Upgrading a Port

When you notice that a port is out of date compared to the latest version from the original authors, you should first ensure that you have the latest port. You can find them in the `ports/ports-current` directory of the FreeBSD FTP mirror sites. However, if you are working with more than a few ports, you will probably find it easier to use Subversion or [portsnap\(8\)](#) to keep your whole ports collection up-to-date, as described in the [Handbook](#). This will have the added benefit of tracking all the port's dependencies.

The next step is to see if there is an update already pending. To do this, you have two options. There is a searchable interface to the [FreeBSD Problem Report \(PR\) database](#) (also known as GNATS). Select `ports` in the dropdown, and enter the name of the port.

However, sometimes people forget to put the name of the port into the Synopsis field in an unambiguous fashion. In that case, you can try the [FreeBSD Ports Monitoring System](#) (also known as `portsmon`). This system attempts to classify port PRs by portname. To search for PRs about a particular port, use the [Overview of One Port](#).

If there is no pending PR, the next step is to send an email to the port's maintainer, as shown by `make maintainer`. That person may already be working on an upgrade, or have a reason to not upgrade the port right now (because of, for example, stability problems of the new version); you would not want to duplicate their work. Note that unmaintained ports are listed with a maintainer of `ports@FreeBSD.org`, which is just the general ports mailing list, so sending mail there probably will not help in this case.

If the maintainer asks you to do the upgrade or there is no maintainer, then you have a chance to help out FreeBSD by preparing the update yourself! Please do this by using the [diff\(1\)](#) command in the base system.

To create a suitable diff for a single patch, copy the file that needs patching to *something.orig*, save your changes to *something* and then create your patch:

```
% diff -u something.orig something > something.diff
```

Otherwise, you should either use the `svn diff` method ([Section 10.1, “Using Subversion to Make Patches”](#)) or copy the contents of the port to an entire different directory and use the result of the recursive [diff\(1\)](#) output of the new and old ports directories (e.g., if your modified port directory is called `superedit` and the original is in our tree as `superedit.bak`, then save the result of `diff -ruN superedit.bak superedit`). Either unified or context diff is fine, but port committers generally prefer unified diffs. Note the use of the `-N` option—this is the accepted way to force diff to properly deal with the case of new files being added or old files being deleted. Before sending us the diff, please ex-

---

amine the output to make sure all the changes make sense. (In particular, make sure you first clean out the work directories with `make clean`).

To simplify common operations with patch files, you can use `/usr/ports/Tools/scripts/patchtool.py`. Before using it, please read `/usr/ports/Tools/scripts/README.patchtool`.

If the port is unmaintained, and you are actively using it yourself, please consider volunteering to become its maintainer. FreeBSD has over 4000 ports without maintainers, and this is an area where more volunteers are always needed. (For a detailed description of the responsibilities of maintainers, refer to the section in the [Developer's Handbook](#).)

The best way to send us the diff is by including it via [send-pr\(1\)](#) (category ports). If you are maintaining the port, be sure to put `[maintainer update]` at the beginning of your synopsis line and set the “Class” of your PR to `maintainer-update`. Otherwise, the “Class” of your PR should be `change-request`. Please mention any added or deleted files in the message, as they have to be explicitly specified to [svn\(1\)](#) when doing a commit. If the diff is more than about 20KB, please compress and uuencode it; otherwise, just include it in the PR as is.

Before using [send-pr\(1\)](#), review the [Writing the problem report](#) section in the Problem Reports article. It contains far more information about how to write useful problem reports.



### Important

If the upgrade is motivated by security concerns or a serious fault in the currently committed port, please notify the Ports Management Team [<portmgr@FreeBSD.org>](mailto:portmgr@FreeBSD.org) to request immediate rebuilding and redistribution of the port's package. Unsuspecting users of `pkg install` will otherwise continue to install the old version via `pkg install` for several weeks.



### Note

Once again, please use [diff\(1\)](#) and not [shar\(1\)](#) to send updates to existing ports! This helps ports committers understand exactly what is being changed.

Now that you have done all that, read about how to keep up-to-date in [Chapter 14, Keeping Up](#).



## 10.1. Using Subversion to Make Patches

When possible, please submit a [svn\(1\)](#) diff. They are easier to handle than diffs between “new and old” directories. It is easier to see what has changed, and to update the diff if something was modified in the Ports Collection since you began work on it, or if the committer asks for something to be fixed. Also, a patch generated with `svn diff` can be easily applied with `svn patch` and will save some time to the committer.

```
% cd ~/my_wrkdir ❶
% svn co https://svn0.us-west.FreeBSD.org /ports/head/dns/pdnsd ❷
% cd ~/my_wrkdir/pdnsd
```

- ❶ This can be anywhere you want, of course; building ports is not limited to within `/usr/ports/`.
- ❷ [svn0.us-west.FreeBSD.org](https://svn0.us-west.FreeBSD.org) is a public Subversion server. Select the closest mirror and verify the mirror server certificate from the list of [Subversion mirror sites](#).

While in the working directory, make any changes that you would usually make to the port. If you add, move or remove a file, use `svn` to track these changes:

```
% svn add new_file
% svn move old_name new_name
% svn remove deleted_file
```

Make sure that you check the port using the checklist in [Section 3.4, “Testing the Port”](#) and [Section 3.5, “Checking the Port with portlint”](#).

```
% svn status
% svn update ❶
```

- ❶ This will try to merge the differences between your patch and current repository version; watch the output carefully. The letter in front of each file name indicates what was done with it. See [Table 10.1, “Subversion Update File Prefixes”](#) for a complete list.

Table 10.1. Subversion Update File Prefixes

U	The file was updated without problems.
G	The file was updated without problems (you will only see this when working against a remote repository).
M	The file had been modified, and was merged without conflicts.
C	The file had been modified, and was merged with conflicts.

If C is displayed as a result of `svn update`, it means something changed in the Subversion repository and [svn\(1\)](#) was not able to merge the local changes with those from the repository. It is always a good idea to inspect the changes anyway, since [svn\(1\)](#) does not know anything about how a port should be, so it might (and probably will) merge things that do not make sense.

The last step is to make a unified [diff\(1\)](#) of the changes:

```
% svn diff > ../`basename ${PWD}`.diff
```



### Note

Any files that have been removed should be explicitly mentioned in the PR, because file removal may not be obvious to the committer.

Send your patch following the guidelines in [Chapter 10, Upgrading a Port](#).



### Tip

You can have patch automatically generated and the PR pre-filled with your contact information by using the Port Tools `port submit` command. See [Section 9.3, “Port Tools”](#) for more details.

## 10.2. The Files UPDATING and MOVED

If upgrading the port requires special steps like changing configuration files or running a specific program, you should document this in the file `/usr/ports/UPDATING`. The format of an entry in this file is as follows:

```
YYYYMMDD:
AFFECTS: users of portcategory/portname
AUTHOR: Your name <Your email address>

Special instructions
```

If you are including exact portmaster or portupgrading instructions, please make sure to get the shell escaping right.



## Note

It is recommended that the AFFECTS line contains a glob matching all the ports affected by the entry so that automated tools can parse it as easily as possible. If an update concerns all the existing BIND 9 versions the AFFECTS content should be `users of dns/bind9*`, it should *not* be `users of BIND 9`

The `/usr/ports/MOVED` file is used to list moved or removed ports. Each line in the file is made up of the name of the port, where the port was moved to, when, and why. If the port was removed, the section detailing where it was moved to can be left blank. Each section must be separated by the `|` (pipe) character, like so:

```
old name|new name (blank for deleted)|date of move|reason
```

The date should be entered in the form `YYYY-MM-DD`. New entries should be added to the top of the file to keep it in reverse chronological order (the latest entries first).

If a port was removed but has since been restored, delete the line in this file that states that it was removed.

If a port was renamed and then renamed back to its original name, you should add a new one with the intermediate name to the old name, and remove the old entry as to not create a loop.

The changes can be validated with `Tools/scripts/MOVEDlint.awk`.



# Chapter 11. Security

## 11.1. Why Security is So Important

Bugs are occasionally introduced to the software. Arguably, the most dangerous of them are those opening security vulnerabilities. From the technical viewpoint, such vulnerabilities are to be closed by exterminating the bugs that caused them. However, the policies for handling mere bugs and security vulnerabilities are very different.

A typical small bug affects only those users who have enabled some combination of options triggering the bug. The developer will eventually release a patch followed by a new version of the software, free of the bug, but the majority of users will not take the trouble of upgrading immediately because the bug has never vexed them. A critical bug that may cause data loss represents a graver issue. Nevertheless, prudent users know that a lot of possible accidents, besides software bugs, are likely to lead to data loss, and so they make backups of important data; in addition, a critical bug will be discovered really soon.

A security vulnerability is all different. First, it may remain unnoticed for years because often it does not cause software malfunction. Second, a malicious party can use it to gain unauthorized access to a vulnerable system, to destroy or alter sensitive data; and in the worst case the user will not even notice the harm caused. Third, exposing a vulnerable system often assists attackers to break into other systems that could not be compromised otherwise. Therefore closing a vulnerability alone is not enough: the audience should be notified of it in most clear and comprehensive manner, which will allow to evaluate the danger and take appropriate actions.

## 11.2. Fixing Security Vulnerabilities

While on the subject of ports and packages, a security vulnerability may initially appear in the original distribution or in the port files. In the former case, the original software developer is likely to release a patch or a new version instantly, and you will only need to update the port promptly with respect to the author's fix. If the fix is delayed for some reason, you should either [mark the port as FORBIDDEN](#) or introduce a patch file of your own to the port. In the case of a vulnerable port, just fix the port as soon as possible. In either case, [the standard procedure for submitting your change](#) should be followed unless you have rights to commit it directly to the ports tree.



### Important

Being a ports committer is not enough to commit to an arbitrary port. Remember that ports usually have maintainers, whom you should respect.

Please make sure that the port's revision is bumped as soon as the vulnerability has been closed. That is how the users who upgrade installed packages on a regular basis will see they need to run an update. Besides, a new package will be built and distributed over FTP and WWW mirrors, replacing the vulnerable one. `PORTREVISION` should be bumped unless `PORTVERSION` has changed in the course of correcting the vulnerability. That is you should bump `PORTREVISION` if you have added a patch file to the port, but you should not if you have updated the port to the latest software version and thus already touched `PORTVERSION`. Please refer to the [corresponding section](#) for more information.

## 11.3. Keeping the Community Informed

### 11.3.1. The VuXML Database

A very important and urgent step to take as early after a security vulnerability is discovered as possible is to notify the community of port users about the jeopardy. Such notification serves two purposes. First, should the danger be really severe it will be wise to apply an instant workaround. E.g., stop the affected network service or even deinstall the port completely until the vulnerability is closed. Second, a lot of users tend to upgrade installed packages only occasionally. They will know from the notification that they *must* update the package without delay as soon as a corrected version is available.

Given the huge number of ports in the tree, a security advisory cannot be issued on each incident without creating a flood and losing the attention of the audience when it comes to really serious matters. Therefore security vulnerabilities found in ports are recorded in [the FreeBSD VuXML database](#). The Security Officer Team members also monitor it for issues requiring their intervention.

If you have committer rights you can update the VuXML database by yourself. So you will both help the Security Officer Team and deliver the crucial information to the community earlier. However, if you are not a committer, or you believe you have found an exceptionally severe vulnerability please do not hesitate to contact the Security Officer Team directly as described on the [FreeBSD Security Information](#) page.

The VuXML database is an XML document. Its source file `vuln.xml` is kept right inside the port `security/vuxml`. Therefore the file's full pathname will be `PORTSDIR/securi-`

ty/vuxml/vuln.xml . Each time you discover a security vulnerability in a port, please add an entry for it to that file. Until you are familiar with VuXML, the best thing you can do is to find an existing entry fitting your case, then copy it and use it as a template.

### 11.3.2. A Short Introduction to VuXML

The full-blown XML format is complex, and far beyond the scope of this book. However, to gain basic insight on the structure of a VuXML entry you need only the notion of tags. XML tag names are enclosed in angle brackets. Each opening <tag> must have a matching closing </tag>. Tags may be nested. If nesting, the inner tags must be closed before the outer ones. There is a hierarchy of tags, i.e., more complex rules of nesting them. This is similar to HTML. The major difference is that XML is eXtensible, i.e., based on defining custom tags. Due to its intrinsic structure XML puts otherwise amorphous data into shape. VuXML is particularly tailored to mark up descriptions of security vulnerabilities.

Now consider a realistic VuXML entry:

```
<vuln vid="f4bc80f4-da62-11d8-90ea-0004ac98a7b9"> ❶
  <topic>Several vulnerabilities found in Foo</topic> ❷
  <affects>
    <package>
      <name>foo</name> ❸
      <name>foo-devel</name>
      <name>ja-foo</name>
      <range><ge>1.6</ge><lt>1.9</lt></range> ❹
      <range><ge>2.*</ge><lt>2.4_1</lt></range>
      <range><eq>3.0b1</eq></range>
    </package>
    <package>
      <name>openfoo</name> ❺
      <range><lt>1.10_7</lt></range> ❻
      <range><ge>1.2,1</ge><lt>1.3_1,1</lt></range>
    </package>
  </affects>
  <description>
    <body xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
      <p>J. Random Hacker reports:</p> ❼
      <blockquote
        cite="http://j.r.hacker.com/advisories/1">
        <p>Several issues in the Foo software may be exploited
          via carefully crafted QUUX requests. These requests will
          permit the injection of Bar code, mumble theft, and the
          readability of the Foo administrator account.</p>
        </blockquote>
      </body>
    </description>
    <references> ❽
      <freebsdlsa>SA-10:75.foo</freebsdlsa> ❾
      <freebsdpr>ports/987654</freebsdpr> ❿
      <cvename>CAN-2010-0201</cvename> ⓫
```

```

<cvename>CAN-2010-0466</cvename>
<bid>96298</bid> ❷
<certsa>CA-2010-99</certsa> ❸
<certvu>740169</certvu> ❹
<uscertsa>SA10-99A</uscertsa> ❺
<uscertta>SA10-99A</uscertta> ❻
<mlist msgid="201075606@hacker.com">http://marc.theaimsgroup.
com/?l=bugtraq&m=203886607825605</mlist> ❽
  <url>http://j.r.hacker.com/advisories/1</url> ❾
</references>
<dates>
  <discovery>2010-05-25</discovery> ❿
  <entry>2010-07-13</entry> ⓫
  <modified>2010-09-17</modified> ⓬
</dates>
</vuln>

```

The tag names are supposed to be self-explanatory so we shall take a closer look only at fields you will need to fill in by yourself:

- ❶ This is the top-level tag of a VuXML entry. It has a mandatory attribute, `vid`, specifying a universally unique identifier (UUID) for this entry (in quotes). You should generate a UUID for each new VuXML entry (and do not forget to substitute it for the template UUID unless you are writing the entry from scratch). You can use [uuid-gen\(1\)](#) to generate a VuXML UUID.
- ❷ This is a one-line description of the issue found.
- ❸ The names of packages affected are listed there. Multiple names can be given since several packages may be based on a single master port or software product. This may include stable and development branches, localized versions, and slave ports featuring different choices of important build-time configuration options.



## Important

It is your responsibility to find all such related packages when writing a VuXML entry. Keep in mind that `make search name=foo` is your friend. The primary points to look for are as follows:

- the `foo-devel` variant for a `foo` port;
- other variants with a suffix like `-a4` (for print-related packages), `-without-gui` (for packages with X support disabled), or similar;



- jp-, ru-, zh-, and other possible localized variants in the corresponding national categories of the ports collection.

- 4 Affected versions of the package(s) are specified there as one or more ranges using a combination of <lt>, <le>, <eq>, <ge>, and <gt> elements. The version ranges given should not overlap.

In a range specification, \* (asterisk) denotes the smallest version number. In particular, 2.\* is less than 2.a. Therefore an asterisk may be used for a range to match all possible alpha, beta, and RC versions. For instance, <ge>2.\*</ge><lt>3.\*</lt> will selectively match every 2.x version while <ge>2.0</ge><lt>3.0</lt> will not since the latter misses 2.r3 and matches 3.b.

The above example specifies that affected are versions from 1.6 to 1.9 inclusive, versions 2.x before 2.4\_1, and version 3.0b1.

- 5 Several related package groups (essentially, ports) can be listed in the <affected> section. This can be used if several software products (say FooBar, FreeBar and OpenBar) grow from the same code base and still share its bugs and vulnerabilities. Note the difference from listing multiple names within a single <package> section.
- 6 The version ranges should allow for PORTEPOCH and PORTREVISION if applicable. Please remember that according to the collation rules, a version with a non-zero PORTEPOCH is greater than any version without PORTEPOCH, e.g., 3.0,1 is greater than 3.1 or even than 8.9.
- 7 This is a summary of the issue. XHTML is used in this field. At least enclosing <p> and </p> should appear. More complex mark-up may be used, but only for the sake of accuracy and clarity: No eye candy please.
- 8 This section contains references to relevant documents. As many references as apply are encouraged.
- 9 This is a [FreeBSD security advisory](#).
- 10 This is a [FreeBSD problem report](#).
- 11 This is a [MITRE CVE](#) identifier.
- 12 This is a [SecurityFocus Bug ID](#).
- 13 This is a [US-CERT](#) security advisory.
- 14 This is a [US-CERT](#) vulnerability note.
- 15 This is a [US-CERT](#) Cyber Security Alert.
- 16 This is a [US-CERT](#) Technical Cyber Security Alert.
- 17 This is a URL to an archived posting in a mailing list. The attribute msgid is optional and may specify the message ID of the posting.
- 18 This is a generic URL. It should be used only if none of the other reference categories apply.
- 19 This is the date when the issue was disclosed (YYYY-MM-DD ).
- 20 This is the date when the entry was added (YYYY-MM-DD ).

- ④ This is the date when any information in the entry was last modified (YYYY-MM-DD). New entries must not include this field. It should be added upon editing an existing entry.

### 11.3.3. Testing Your Changes to the VuXML Database

Assume you just wrote or filled in an entry for a vulnerability in the package `clamav` that has been fixed in version `0.65_7`.

As a prerequisite, you need to *install* fresh versions of the ports [ports-mgmt/portaudit](#), [ports-mgmt/portaudit-db](#), and [security/vuxml](#).



#### Note

To run `packaudit` you must have permission to write to its `DATABASDIR`, typically `/var/db/portaudit`.

To use a different directory set the `DATABASDIR` environment variable to a different location.

If you are working in a directory other than `${PORTSDIR}/security/vuxml` set the `VUXMLDIR` environment variable to the directory where `vuln.xml` is located.

First, check whether there already is an entry for this vulnerability. If there were such an entry, it would match the previous version of the package, `0.65_6`:

```
% packaudit
% portaudit clamav-0.65_6
```

If there is none found, you have the green light to add a new entry for this vulnerability.

```
% cd ${PORTSDIR}/security/vuxml
% make newentry
```

When you are done verify its syntax and formatting.

```
% make validate
```



### Note

You will need at least one of the following packages installed: [textproc/libxml2](#), [textproc/jade](#).

Now rebuild the portaudit database from the VuXML file:

```
% packaudit
```

To verify that the <affected> section of your entry will match correct package(s), issue the following command:

```
% portaudit -f /usr/ports/INDEX -r uuid
```



### Note

Please refer to [portaudit\(1\)](#) for better understanding of the command syntax.

Make sure that your entry produces no spurious matches in the output.

Now check whether the right package versions are matched by your entry:

```
% portaudit clamav-0.65_6 clamav-0.65_7
Affected package: clamav-0.65_6 (matched by clamav<0.65_7)
Type of problem: clamav remote denial-of-service.
Reference: <http://www.freebsd.org/ports/portaudit/74a9541d-5d6c-11d8-80e3-0020ed76ef5a.html>

1 problem(s) found.
```

The former version should match while the latter one should not.

Finally, verify whether the web page generated from the VuXML database looks like expected:

```
% mkdir -p ~/public_html/portaudit
% packaudit
% lynx ~/public_html/portaudit/74a9541d-5d6c-11d8-80e3-0020ed76ef5a.
html
```



# Chapter 12. Dos and Don'ts

## 12.1. Introduction

Here is a list of common dos and don'ts that are encountered during the porting process. Check the port against this list, but also check ports in the [PR database](#) that others have submitted. Submit any comments on ports you check as described in [Bug Reports and General Commentary](#). Checking ports in the PR database will both make it faster for us to commit them, and prove that you know what you are doing.

## 12.2. WRKDIR

Do not write anything to files outside WRKDIR. WRKDIR is the only place that is guaranteed to be writable during the port build (see [installing ports from a CDROM](#) for an example of building ports from a read-only tree). If you need to modify one of the pkg- \* files, do so by [redefining a variable](#), not by writing over it.

## 12.3. WRKDIRPREFIX

Make sure your port honors WRKDIRPREFIX. Most ports do not have to worry about this. In particular, if you are referring to a WRKDIR of another port, note that the correct location is WRKDIRPREFIXPORTSDIR/*subdir/name*/work not PORTSDIR/*subdir/name*/work or .CURDIR/*../..subdir/name*/work or some such.

Also, if you are defining WRKDIR yourself, make sure you prepend \${WRKDIRPREFIX}\${.CURDIR} in the front.

## 12.4. Differentiating Operating Systems and OS Versions

You may come across code that needs modifications or conditional compilation based upon what version of FreeBSD Unix it is running under. The preferred way to tell FreeBSD versions apart are the \_\_FreeBSD\_version and \_\_FreeBSD\_\_ macros defined in [sys/param.h](#). If this file is not included add the code,

```
#include <sys/param.h>
```

to the proper place in the .c file.

`__FreeBSD__` is defined in all versions of FreeBSD as their major version number. For example, in FreeBSD 9.x, `__FreeBSD__` is defined to be 9.

```
#if __FreeBSD__ >= 9
#  if __FreeBSD_version >= 901000
/* 9.1+ release specific code here */
#  endif
#endif
```

## 12.5. Writing Something After `bsd.port.mk`

Do not write anything after the `.include <bsd.port.mk>` line. It usually can be avoided by including `bsd.port.pre.mk` somewhere in the middle of your Makefile and `bsd.port.post.mk` at the end.



### Note

Include either the `bsd.port.pre.mk` / `bsd.port.post.mk` pair or `bsd.port.mk` only; do not mix these two usages.

`bsd.port.pre.mk` only defines a few variables, which can be used in tests in the Makefile, `bsd.port.post.mk` defines the rest.

Here are some important variables defined in `bsd.port.pre.mk` (this is not the complete list, please read `bsd.port.mk` for the complete list).

Variable	Description
ARCH	The architecture as returned by <code>uname -m</code> (e.g., <code>i386</code> )
OPSYS	The operating system type, as returned by <code>uname -s</code> (e.g., <code>FreeBSD</code> )
OSREL	The release version of the operating system (e.g., <code>2.1.5</code> or <code>2.2.7</code> )
OSVERSION	The numeric version of the operating system; the same as <code>__FreeBSD_version</code> .
LOCALBASE	The base of the “local” tree (e.g., <code>/usr/local</code> )
PREFIX	Where the port installs itself (see <a href="#">more on PREFIX</a> ).



### Note

If you have to define the variable `MASTERDIR`, do so before including `bsd.port.pre.mk` .

Here are some examples of things you can write after `bsd.port.pre.mk` :

```
# no need to compile lang/perl5 if perl5 is already in system
.if ${OSVERSION} > 300003
BROKEN= perl is in system
.endif
```

You did remember to use tab instead of spaces after `BROKEN=` and `;-)`.

## 12.6. Use the `exec` Statement in Wrapper Scripts

If the port installs a shell script whose purpose is to launch another program, and if launching that program is the last action performed by the script, make sure to launch the program using the `exec` statement, for instance:

```
#!/bin/sh
exec %%LOCALBASE%%/bin/java -jar %%DATADIR%%/foo.jar "$@"
```

The `exec` statement replaces the shell process with the specified program. If `exec` is omitted, the shell process remains in memory while the program is executing, and needlessly consumes system resources.

## 12.7. Do Things Rationally

The Makefile should do things simply and reasonably. If you can make it a couple of lines shorter or more readable, then do so. Examples include using a `make .if` construct instead of a shell `if` construct, not redefining `do-extract` if you can redefine `EXTRACT*` instead, and using `GNU_CONFIGURE` instead of `CONFIGURE_ARGS += --prefix=${PREFIX}` .

If you find yourself having to write a lot of new code to try to do something, please go back and review `bsd.port.mk` to see if it contains an existing implementation of what you are trying to do. While hard to read, there are a great many seemingly-hard problems for which `bsd.port.mk` already provides a shorthand solution.

## 12.8. Respect Both `cc` and `cxx`

The port must respect both CC and CXX variables. What we mean by this is that the port must not set the values of these variables absolutely, overriding existing values; instead, it may append whatever values it needs to the existing values. This is so that build options that affect all ports can be set globally.

If the port does not respect these variables, please add `NO_PACKAGE=ignores` either `cc` or `cxx` to the Makefile.

An example of a Makefile respecting both CC and CXX variables follows. Note the `?=`:

```
CC?= gcc
```

```
CXX?= g++
```

Here is an example which respects neither CC nor CXX variables:

```
CC= gcc
```

```
CXX= g++
```

Both CC and CXX variables can be defined on FreeBSD systems in `/etc/make.conf`. The first example defines a value if it was not previously set in `/etc/make.conf`, preserving any system-wide definitions. The second example clobbers anything previously defined.

## 12.9. Respect `CFLAGS`

The port must respect the CFLAGS variable. What we mean by this is that the port must not set the value of this variable absolutely, overriding the existing value; instead, it may append whatever values it needs to the existing value. This is so that build options that affect all ports can be set globally.

If it does not, please add `NO_PACKAGE=ignores` `cflags` to the Makefile.

An example of a Makefile respecting the CFLAGS variable follows. Note the `+=`:

```
CFLAGS+= -Wall -Werror
```

Here is an example which does not respect the CFLAGS variable:

```
CFLAGS= -Wall -Werror
```

The CFLAGS variable is defined on FreeBSD systems in `/etc/make.conf`. The first example appends additional flags to the CFLAGS variable, preserving any system-wide definitions. The second example clobbers anything previously defined.



You should remove optimization flags from the third party Makefiles. System CFLAGS contains system-wide optimization flags. An example from an unmodified Makefile:

```
CFLAGS= -O3 -funroll-loops -DHAVE_SOUND
```

Using system optimization flags, the Makefile would look similar to the following example:

```
CFLAGS+= -DHAVE_SOUND
```

## 12.10. Threading Libraries

The threading library must be linked to the binaries using a special flag `-pthread` on FreeBSD. If a port insists on linking `-lpthread` directly, patch it to use `-pthread`.



### Note

If building the port errors out with unrecognized option `'-pthread'`, it may be desirable to use `cc` as linker by setting `CONFIGURE_ENV` to `LD=${CC}`. The `-pthread` option is not supported by `ld` directly.

## 12.11. Feedback

Do send applicable changes/patches to the original author/maintainer for inclusion in next release of the code. This will only make your job that much easier for the next release.

## 12.12. README.html

`README.html` is not part of the port, but generated by `make readme`. Do not include this file in patches or commits.



### Note

If `make readme` fails, make sure that the default value of `ECHO_MSG` has not been modified by the port.

## 12.13. Marking a Port as Architecture Neutral

Ports that do not have any architecture-dependent files or requirements are identified by setting `NO_ARCH=yes` .

## 12.14. Marking a Port Not Installable with `BROKEN`, `FORBIDDEN`, or `IGNORE`

In certain cases users should be prevented from installing a port. To tell a user that a port should not be installed, there are several make variables that can be used in a port's Makefile. The value of the following make variables will be the reason that is given back to users for why the port refuses to install itself. Please use the correct make variable as each make variable conveys radically different meanings to both users, and to automated systems that depend on the Makefiles, such as [the ports build cluster](#), [FreshPorts](#), and [portsmon](#).

### 12.14.1. Variables

- `BROKEN` is reserved for ports that currently do not compile, install, deinstall, or run correctly. It should be used for ports where the problem is believed to be temporary.

If instructed, the build cluster will still attempt to try to build them to see if the underlying problem has been resolved. (However, in general, the cluster is run without this.)

For instance, use `BROKEN` when a port:

- does not compile
  - fails its configuration or installation process
  - installs files outside of `${PREFIX}`
  - does not remove all its files cleanly upon deinstall (however, it may be acceptable, and desirable, for the port to leave user-modified files behind)
  - has runtime issues on systems where it is supposed to run fine.
- `FORBIDDEN` is used for ports that contain a security vulnerability or induce grave concern regarding the security of a FreeBSD system with a given port installed (e.g., a reputedly insecure program or a program that provides easily exploitable services). Ports should be marked as `FORBIDDEN` as soon as a particular piece of software has a vulnerability and there is no released upgrade. Ideally ports should be upgraded as soon as possible when a security vulnerability is discovered so as to reduce the number of vulnerable FreeBSD hosts (we like being known for being secure), however sometimes there is a noticeable time gap between disclosure of a vulnerability and an updated release

of the vulnerable software. Do not mark a port **FORBIDDEN** for any reason other than security.

- **IGNORE** is reserved for ports that should not be built for some other reason. It should be used for ports where the problem is believed to be structural. The build cluster will not, under any circumstances, build ports marked as **IGNORE**. For instance, use **IGNORE** when a port:
  - does not work on the installed version of FreeBSD
  - has a distfile which may not be automatically fetched due to licensing restrictions
  - does not work with some other currently installed port (for instance, the port depends on [www/apache20](#) but [www/apache22](#) is installed)



### Note

If a port would conflict with a currently installed port (for example, if they install a file in the same place that performs a different function), use **CONFLICTS** instead. **CONFLICTS** will set **IGNORE** by itself.

- If a port should be marked **IGNORE** only on certain architectures, there are two other convenience variables that will automatically set **IGNORE** for you: **ONLY\_FOR\_ARCHS** and **NOT\_FOR\_ARCHS**. Examples:

```
ONLY_FOR_ARCHS= i386 amd64
```

```
NOT_FOR_ARCHS= ia64 sparc64
```

A custom **IGNORE** message can be set using **ONLY\_FOR\_ARCHS\_REASON** and **NOT\_FOR\_ARCHS\_REASON**. Per architecture entries are possible with **ONLY\_FOR\_ARCHS\_REASON\_ARCH** and **NOT\_FOR\_ARCHS\_REASON\_ARCH**.

- If a port fetches i386 binaries and installs them, **IA32\_BINARY\_PORT** should be set. If this variable is set, it will be checked whether the `/usr/lib32` directory is available for IA32 versions of libraries and whether the kernel has IA32 compatibility compiled in. If one of these two dependencies is not satisfied, **IGNORE** will be set automatically.

## 12.14.2. Implementation Notes

The strings should not be quoted. Also, the wording of the string should be somewhat different due to the way the information is shown to the user. Examples:

## Marking a Port for Removal with DEPRECATED or EXPIRATION\_DATE

```
BROKEN= fails to link with base -lcrypto
```

```
IGNORE= unsupported on recent versions
```

resulting in the following output from `make describe`:

```
==> foobar-0.1 is marked as broken: fails to link with base -lcrypto.
```

```
==> foobar-0.1 is unsupported on recent versions.
```

## 12.15. Marking a Port for Removal with DEPRECATED or EXPIRATION\_DATE

Do remember that `BROKEN` and `FORBIDDEN` are to be used as a temporary resort if a port is not working. Permanently broken ports should be removed from the tree entirely.

When it makes sense to do so, users can be warned about a pending port removal with `DEPRECATED` and `EXPIRATION_DATE`. The former is simply a string stating why the port is scheduled for removal; the latter is a string in ISO 8601 format (YYYY-MM-DD). Both will be shown to the user.

It is possible to set `DEPRECATED` without an `EXPIRATION_DATE` (for instance, recommending a newer version of the port), but the converse does not make any sense.

There is no set policy on how much notice to give. Current practice seems to be one month for security-related issues and two months for build issues. This also gives any interested committers a little time to fix the problems.

## 12.16. Avoid Use of the .error Construct

The correct way for a `Makefile` to signal that the port can not be installed due to some external factor (for instance, the user has specified an illegal combination of build options) is to set a non-blank value to `IGNORE`. This value will be formatted and shown to the user by `make install`.

It is a common mistake to use `.error` for this purpose. The problem with this is that many automated tools that work with the ports tree will fail in this situation. The most common occurrence of this is seen when trying to build `/usr/ports/INDEX` (see [Section 9.1, “Running make describe”](#)). However, even more trivial commands such as `make maintainer` also fail in this scenario. This is not acceptable.

### Example 12.1. How to Avoid Using `.error`

The first of the next two Makefile snippets will cause `make index` to fail, while the second one will not:

```
.error "option is not supported"
```

```
IGNORE=option is not supported
```

## 12.17. Usage of `sysctl`

The usage of `sysctl` is discouraged except in targets. This is because the evaluation of any makevars, such as used during `make index`, then has to run the command, further slowing down that process.

Usage of [sysctl\(8\)](#) should always be done with the `SYSCTL` variable, as it contains the fully qualified path and can be overridden, if one has such a special need.

## 12.18. Rerolling Distfiles

Sometimes the authors of software change the content of released distfiles without changing the file's name. You have to verify that the changes are official and have been performed by the author. It has happened in the past that the distfile was silently altered on the download servers with the intent to cause harm or compromise end user security.

Put the old distfile aside, download the new one, unpack them and compare the content with [diff\(1\)](#). If you see nothing suspicious, you can update `distinfo`. Be sure to summarize the differences in your PR or commit log, so that other people know that you have taken care to ensure that nothing bad has happened.

You might also want to contact the authors of the software and confirm the changes with them.

## 12.19. Avoiding Linuxisms

Do not use `/proc` if there are any other ways of getting the information, e.g., `setprogname(argv[0])` in `main()` and then [getprogname\(3\)](#) if you want to “know your name”.

Do not rely on behaviour that is undocumented by POSIX.

Do not record timestamps in the critical path of the application if it also works without. Getting timestamps may be slow, depending on the accuracy of timestamps in the OS. If timestamps are really needed, determine how precise they have to be and use an API which is documented to just deliver the needed precision.

A number of simple syscalls (for example [gettimeofday\(2\)](#), [getpid\(2\)](#)) are much faster on Linux® than on any other operating system due to caching and the vsyscall performance optimizations. Do not rely on them being cheap in performance-critical applications. In general, try hard to avoid syscalls if possible.

Do not rely on Linux®-specific socket behaviour. In particular, default socket buffer sizes are different (call [setsockopt\(2\)](#) with `SO_SNDBUF` and `SO_RCVBUF`, and while Linux®'s [send\(2\)](#) blocks when the socket buffer is full, FreeBSD's will fail and set `ENOBUFS` in `errno`).

If relying on non-standard behaviour is required, encapsulate it properly into a generic API, do a check for the behaviour in the configure stage, and stop if it is missing.

Check the [man pages](#) to see if the function used is a POSIX interface (in the “STANDARDS” section of the man page).

Do not assume that `/bin/sh` is `bash`. Ensure that a command line passed to [system\(3\)](#) will work with a POSIX compliant shell.

A list of common bashisms is available [here](#).

Check that headers are included in the POSIX or man page recommended way, e.g., `sys/types.h` is often forgotten, which is not as much of a problem for Linux® as it is for FreeBSD.

Compile threaded applications with “-pthread”, not “-lpthread” or variations thereof.

## 12.20. Miscellanea

The files `pkg-descr` and `pkg-plist` should each be double-checked. If you are reviewing a port and feel they can be worded better, do so.

Do not copy more copies of the GNU General Public License into our system, please.

Please be careful to note any legal issues! Do not let us illegally distribute software!

# Chapter 13. A Sample Makefile

Here is a sample Makefile that you can use to create a new port. Make sure you remove all the extra comments (ones between brackets)!

It is recommended that you follow this format (ordering of variables, empty lines between sections, etc.). This format is designed so that the most important information is easy to locate. We recommend that you use [portlint](#) to check the Makefile.

```
[the header...just to make it easier for us to identify the ports.-]
# Created by: Satoshi Asami <asami@FreeBSD.org>
[The optional Created by: line names the person who originally
created the port. Note that the ":" is followed by a space
and not a tab character.
If this line is present, future maintainers should
not change or remove it except at the original author's request.-]

# $FreeBSD$
[ ^^^^^^^^^ This will be automatically replaced with RCS ID string ʘ
by SVN
when it is committed to our repository. If upgrading a port, do ʘ
not alter
this line back to "$FreeBSD$". SVN deals with it automatically.-]

[section to describe the port itself and the master site - PORTNAME
and PORTVERSION are always first, followed by CATEGORIES,
and then MASTER_SITES, which can be followed by MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR.
PKGNAMEPREFIX and PKGNAMESUFFIX, if needed, will be after that.
Then comes DISTNAME, EXTRACT_SUFX and/or DISTFILES, and then
EXTRACT_ONLY, as necessary.-]
PORTNAME= xdvi
PORTVERSION= 18.2
CATEGORIES= print
[do not forget the trailing slash ("/")!
if you are not using MASTER_SITE_* macros]
MASTER_SITES= ${MASTER_SITE_XCONTRIB}
MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR= applications
PKGNAMEPREFIX= ja-
DISTNAME= xdvi-pl18
[set this if the source is not in the standard ".tar.gz" form]
EXTRACT_SUFX= .tar.Z

[section for distributed patches -- can be empty]
PATCH_SITES= ftp://ftp.sra.co.jp/pub/X11/japanese/
PATCHFILES= xdvi-18.patch1.gz xdvi-18.patch2.gz

[maintainer; *mandatory*! This is the person who is volunteering to
handle port updates, build breakages, and to whom a users can direct
```

---

```

questions and bug reports. To keep the quality of the Ports &
Collection
as high as possible, we no longer accept new ports that are &
assigned to
"ports@FreeBSD.org".-]
MAINTAINER= asami@FreeBSD.org
COMMENT= DVI Previewer for the X Window System

[dependencies -- can be empty]
RUN_DEPENDS= gs:${PORTSDIR}/print/ghostscript

[this section is for other standard bsd.port.mk variables that do not
belong to any of the above]
[If it asks questions during configure, build, install...-]
IS_INTERACTIVE= yes
[If it extracts to a directory other than ${DISTNAME}...-]
WRKSRCS= ${WRKDIR}/xdvi-new
[If the distributed patches were not made relative to ${WRKSRCS}, you
may need to tweak this]
PATCH_DIST_STRIP= -p1
[If it requires a "configure" script generated by GNU autoconf to &
be run]
GNU_CONFIGURE= yes
[If it requires GNU make, not /usr/bin/make, to build...-]
USES= gmake
[If it is an X application and requires "xmkmf -a" to be run...-]
USES= imake
[et cetera.-]

[non-standard variables to be used in the rules below]
MY_FAVORITE_RESPONSE= "yeah, right"

[then the special rules, in the order they are called]
pre-fetch:
    i go fetch something, yeah

post-patch:
    i need to do something after patch, great

pre-install:
    and then some more stuff before installing, wow

[and then the epilogue]

.include <bsd.port.mk>

```



# Chapter 14. Keeping Up

The FreeBSD Ports Collection is constantly changing. Here is some information on how to keep up.

## 14.1. FreshPorts

One of the easiest ways to learn about updates that have already been committed is by subscribing to [FreshPorts](#). You can select multiple ports to monitor. Maintainers are strongly encouraged to subscribe, because they will receive notification of not only their own changes, but also any changes that any other FreeBSD committer has made. (These are often necessary to keep up with changes in the underlying ports framework—although it would be most polite to receive an advance heads-up from those committing such changes, sometimes this is overlooked or just simply impractical. Also, in some cases, the changes are very minor in nature. We expect everyone to use their best judgement in these cases.)

If you wish to use FreshPorts, all you need is an account. If your registered email address is `@FreeBSD.org`, you will see the opt-in link on the right hand side of the webpages. For those of you who already have a FreshPorts account, but are not using your `@FreeBSD.org` email address, just change your email to `@FreeBSD.org`, subscribe, then change it back again.

FreshPorts also has a sanity test feature which automatically tests each commit to the FreeBSD ports tree. If subscribed to this service, you will be notified of any errors which FreshPorts detects during sanity testing of your commits.

## 14.2. The Web Interface to the Source Repository

It is possible to browse the files in the source repository by using a web interface. Changes that affect the entire port system are now documented in the [CHANGES](#) file. Changes that affect individual ports are now documented in the [UPDATING](#) file. However, the definitive answer to any question is undoubtedly to read the source code of [bsd.port.mk](#), and associated files.

## 14.3. The FreeBSD Ports Mailing List

If you maintain ports, you should consider following the [FreeBSD ports mailing list](#). Important changes to the way ports work will be announced there, and then committed to [CHANGES](#).

If this mailing list is too high volume you may consider following [FreeBSD ports announce mailing list](#) which is moderated and has no discussion.

## 14.4. The FreeBSD Port Building Cluster

One of the least-publicized strengths of FreeBSD is that an entire cluster of machines is dedicated to continually building the Ports Collection, for each of the major OS releases and for each Tier-1 architecture.

Individual ports are built unless they are specifically marked with `IGNORE`. Ports that are marked with `BROKEN` will still be attempted, to see if the underlying problem has been resolved. (This is done by passing `TRYBROKEN` to the port's Makefile.)

## 14.5. Portscout: the FreeBSD Ports Distfile Scanner

The build cluster is dedicated to building the latest release of each port with distfiles that have already been fetched. However, as the Internet continually changes, distfiles can quickly go missing. [Portscout](#), the FreeBSD Ports distfile scanner, attempts to query every download site for every port to find out if each distfile is still available. Portscout can generate HTML reports and send emails about newly available ports to those who request them. Unless not otherwise subscribed, maintainers are asked to check periodically for changes, either by hand or using the RSS feed.

Portscout's first page gives the email address of the port maintainer, the number of ports the maintainer is responsible for, the number of those ports with new distfiles, and the percentage of those ports that are out-of-date. The search function allows for searching by email address for a specific maintainer, and for selecting whether or not only out-of-date ports should be shown.

Upon clicking on a maintainer's email address, a list of all of their ports is displayed, along with port category, current version number, whether or not there is a new version, when the port was last updated, and finally when it was last checked. A search function on this page allows the user to search for a specific port.

Clicking on a port name in the list displays the [FreshPorts](#) port information.

## 14.6. The FreeBSD Ports Monitoring System

Another handy resource is the [FreeBSD Ports Monitoring System](#) (also known as `portsmon`). This system comprises a database that processes information from several sources and allows it to be browsed via a web interface. Currently, the ports Problem Reports (PRs), the error logs from the build cluster, and individual files from the ports col-

lection are used. In the future, this will be expanded to include the distfile survey, as well as other sources.

To get started, you can view all information about a particular port by using the [Overview of One Port](#).

As of this writing, this is the only resource available that maps GNATS PR entries to port-names. (PR submitters do not always include the portname in their Synopsis, although we would prefer that they did.) So, `portsmon` is a good place to start if you want to find out whether an existing port has any PRs filed against it and/or any build errors; or, to find out if a new port that you may be thinking about creating has already been submitted.



# Chapter 15. Values of USES

Table 15.1. Values of USES

Feature	Arguments	Description
ada	(none), 47	Depends on an Ada-capable compiler, and sets CC accordingly. Defaults to a gcc 4.9 based compiler, use :47 to use the older gcc 4.7 based one.
bison	(none), build, run, both	Uses <a href="#">devel/bison</a> By default, with no arguments or with the build argument, it implies bison is a build-time dependency, run implies a run-time dependency, and both implies both run-time and build-time dependencies.
charsetfix	(none)	Prevents the port from installing charset.alias . This should be installed only by <a href="#">converters/libiconv</a> . CHARSETFIX_MAKEFILEIN can be set to a path relative to WRKSRC if charset.alias is not installed by WRKSRC / Makefile.in .
cmake	(none), outsource, run	Uses CMake for configuring and building. With the outsource argument, an out-of-source build will be performed. With the run argument, a run-time dependency is registered. For more information see <a href="#">Section 6.5.4</a> , “Using cmake”.
compiler	(none), c++0x, c++11-lang, gcc-c++11-lib , c++11-lib, c11, openmp, nest-edfct, features	Determines which compiler to use based on any given wishes. Use c++11-lang if the port needs a C++11-capable compiler, gcc-c++11-

Feature	Arguments	Description
		<p>lib if the port needs the g++ compiler with a C++11 library, and c++11-lib if the port also needs a C++11-ready standard library. If the port needs a compiler understanding C++0X, C11, OpenMP, or nested functions, the corresponding parameters can be used. Use features to request a list of features supported by the default compiler. After including <code>bsd.port.pre.mk</code> the port can inspect the results using these variables:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>COMPILER_TYPE</code> : the default compiler on the system, either gcc or clang</li> <li>• <code>ALT_COMPILER_TYPE</code> : the alternative compiler on the system, either gcc or clang. Only set if two compilers are present in the base system.</li> <li>• <code>COMPILER_VERSION</code> : the first two digits of the version of the default compiler.</li> <li>• <code>ALT_COMPILER_VERSION</code> : the first two digits of the version of the alternative compiler, if present.</li> <li>• <code>CHOSEN_COMPILER_TYPE</code> : the chosen compiler, either gcc or clang</li> <li>• <code>COMPILER_FEATURES</code> : the features supported by the</li> </ul>

Feature	Arguments	Description
		default compiler. It currently lists the C++ library.
cpe	(none)	<p>Include Common Platform Enumeration (CPE) information in package manifest as a CPE 2.3 formatted string. See the <a href="#">CPE specification</a> for details. To add CPE information to a port, follow these steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the official CPE entry for the software product either by using the NVD's <a href="#">CPE search engine</a> or in the <a href="#">official CPE dictionary</a> (warning, very large XML file). <i>Do not ever make up CPE data.</i></li> <li>2. Add cpe to USES and compare the result of <code>make -V CPE_STR</code> to the CPE dictionary entry. Continue one step at a time until <code>make -V CPE_STR</code> is correct.</li> <li>3. If the product name (second field, defaults to PORTNAME) is incorrect, define CPE_PRODUCT .</li> <li>4. If the vendor name (first field, defaults to CPE_PRODUCT ) is incorrect, define CPE_VENDOR .</li> <li>5. If the version field (third field, defaults to PORTVERSION )</li> </ol>

Feature	Arguments	Description
		<p>is incorrect, define <code>CPE_VERSION</code> .</p> <p>6. If the update field (fourth field, defaults to empty) is incorrect, define <code>CPE_UPDATE</code> .</p> <p>7. If it is still not correct, check <code>Mk/Uses/cpe.mk</code> for additional details, or contact the Ports Security Team <a href="mailto:ports-secteam@FreeBSD.org">&lt;ports-secteam@FreeBSD.org&gt;</a>.</p> <p>8. Derive as much as possible of the CPE name from existing variables such as <code>PORTNAME</code> and <code>PORTVERSION</code> . Use variable modifiers to extract the relevant portions from these variables rather than hard-coding the name.</p> <p>9. Always run <code>make -V CPE_STR</code> and check the output before committing anything that changes <code>PORTNAME</code> or <code>PORTVERSION</code> or any other variable which is used to derive <code>CPE_STR</code> .</p>
cran	(none), auto-plist	Uses the Comprehensive R Archive Network. Specify <code>auto-plist</code> to automatically generate <code>pkg-plist</code> .
desktop-file-utils	(none)	Uses <code>update-desktop-database</code> from <a href="#">devel/desktop-file-utils</a> . An extra post-install step will be run without interfering with any post-install steps already in the port <code>Makefile</code> . Lines will



Feature	Arguments	Description
		be inserted into the plist to run update-desktop-database on package install or removal.
desthack	(none)	Changes the behavior of GNU configure to properly support DESTDIR in case the original software does not.
display	(none), ARGS	Set up a virtual display environment. If the environment variable DISPLAY is not set, then Xvfb is added as a build dependency, and CONFIGURE_ENV is extended with the port number of the currently running instance of Xvfb. The ARGS parameter defaults to install and controls the phase around which to start and stop the virtual display.
dos2unix	(none)	<p>The port has files with line endings in DOS format which need to be converted. Three variables can be set to control which files will be converted. The default is to convert <i>all</i> files, including binaries. See <a href="#">Section 4.4.3, “Simple Automatic Replacements”</a> for examples.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DOS2UNIX_REGEX : match file names based on a regular expression.</li> <li>• DOS2UNIX_FILES : match literal file names.</li> <li>• DOS2UNIX_GLOB : match file names based on a glob pattern.</li> </ul>
drupal	6, 7, module, theme	Automate installation of a port that is a Drupal theme

Feature	Arguments	Description
		or module. Use with the version of Drupal that the port is expecting. For example, <code>USES=drupal:6,module</code> says that this port creates a Drupal 6 module. A Drupal 7 theme can be specified with <code>USES=drupal:7,theme</code> .
execinfo	(none)	Add a runtime dependency on <code>libexecinfo.so</code> depending on its presence in the base system.
fam	(none), fam, gamin	Uses a File Alteration Monitor as a library dependency, either <a href="#">devel/fam</a> or <a href="#">devel/gamin</a> . End users can set <code>WITH_FAM_SYSTEM</code> to specify their preference.
fmake	(none)	Uses <a href="#">devel/fmake</a> as a build-time dependency.
fortran	gcc (default), ifort	Uses the Fortran compiler from either GNU or Intel.
fuse	(none)	The port will depend on the FUSE library and handle the dependency on the kernel module depending on the version of FreeBSD.
gecko	libxul (default), firefox, seamonkey, thunderbird, build, XY, XY+	Add a dependency on different gecko based applications. If <code>libxul</code> is used, it is the only argument allowed. When the argument is not <code>libxul</code> , the <code>firefox</code> , <code>seamonkey</code> , or <code>thunderbird</code> arguments can be used, along with optional <code>build</code> and <code>XY/XY+</code> version arguments.
gettext	(none), lib (default), build, run	Uses <a href="#">devel/gettext</a> . By default, with no arguments or with the <code>lib</code> argument, implies a library dependency on <code>libintl.so</code> . <code>build</code> and

Feature	Arguments	Description
		run implies, respectively a build-time and a run-time dependency on xgettext.
gmake	(none), lite	Uses <a href="#">devel/gmake</a> , or <a href="#">devel/gmake-lite</a> if the <code>lite</code> argument is used, as a build-time dependency and sets up the environment to use <code>gmake</code> as the default make for the build.
gssapi	(none), base (default), heimdal, mit, flags, bootstrap	<p>Handle dependencies needed by consumers of the GSS-API. Only libraries that provide the Kerberos mechanism are available. By default, or set to <code>base</code>, the GSS-API library from the base system is used. Can also be set to <code>heimdal</code> to use <a href="#">security/heimdal</a>, or <code>mit</code> to use <a href="#">security/krb5</a>.</p> <p>When the local Kerberos installation is not in <code>LOCALBASE</code>, set <code>HEIMDAL_HOME</code> (for <code>heimdal</code>) or <code>KRB5_HOME</code> (for <code>krb5</code>) to the location of the Kerberos installation.</p> <p>These variables are exported for the ports to use:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>GSSAPIBASEDIR</code></li> <li>• <code>GSSAPICPPFLAGS</code></li> <li>• <code>GSSAPIINCDIR</code></li> <li>• <code>GSSAPILDFLAGS</code></li> <li>• <code>GSSAPILIBDIR</code></li> <li>• <code>GSSAPILIBS</code></li> <li>• <code>GSSAPI_CONFIGURE_ARGS</code></li> </ul>



Feature	Arguments	Description
		<div>GSSAPI_NONE_CONFIGURE_ON= --without-gssapi</div>
iconv	(none), lib, build, patch, translit, wchar_t	Uses iconv functions, either from the port <a href="#">converters/libiconv</a> as a build-time and run-time dependency, or from the base system on 10-CURRENT after a native iconv was committed in <a href="#">254273</a> . By default, with no arguments or with the lib argument, implies iconv with build-time and run-time dependencies. build implies a build-time dependency, and patch implies a patch-time dependency. If the port uses the WCHAR_T or //TRANSLIT iconv extensions, add the relevant arguments so that the correct iconv is used. For more information see <a href="#">Section 6.22, “Using iconv”</a> .
imake	(none), env, notall, noman	Add <a href="#">devel/imake</a> as a build-time dependency and run <code>xmkmf -a</code> during the configure stage. If the env argument is given, the configure target is not set. If the -a flag is a problem for the port, add the notall argument. If xmkmf does not generate a <code>install.man</code> target, add the noman argument.
kmod	(none)	Fills in the boilerplate for kernel module ports, currently:

Feature	Arguments	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add <code>kld</code> to <code>CATEGORIES</code>.</li> <li>• Set <code>SSP_UNSAFE</code>.</li> <li>• Set <code>IGNORE</code> if the kernel sources are not found in <code>SRC_BASE</code>.</li> <li>• Define <code>KMODDIR</code> to <code>/boot/modules</code> by default, add it to <code>PLIST_SUB</code> and <code>MAKE_ENV</code>, and create it upon installation. If <code>KMODDIR</code> is set to <code>/boot/kernel</code>, it will be rewritten to <code>/boot/modules</code>. This prevents breaking packages when upgrading the kernel due to <code>/boot/kernel</code> being renamed to <code>/boot/kernel.old</code> in the process.</li> <li>• Handle cross-referencing kernel modules upon installation and deinstallation.</li> </ul>
<code>lha</code>	<code>(none)</code>	Set <code>EXTRACT_SUFX</code> to <code>.lzh</code>
<code>libtool</code>	<code>(none)</code> , <code>keep<code>la</code></code> , <code>build</code>	Patches <code>libtool</code> scripts. This should be added to all ports that use <code>libtool</code> . The <code>keep<code>la</code></code> argument can be used to keep the <code>.la</code> files. Some ports do not ship with their own copy of <code>libtool</code> and need a build time dependency on <a href="#">devel/libtool</a> , use the <code>:build</code> argument to add such dependency.
<code>lua</code>	<code>(none)</code> , <code>XY+</code> , <code>XY</code> , <code>build</code> , <code>run</code>	Adds a dependency on Lua. By default this is a library undependency, unless overridden by the <code>build</code> or <code>run</code>

Feature	Arguments	Description
		option. The default version is 5.2, unless set by the <i>XY</i> parameter (e.g., 51 or 52+).
makeinfo	build (default), run, both	Add the corresponding dependencies on makeinfo.
makeself	(none)	Indicates that the distribution files are makeself archives and sets the appropriate dependencies.
mono	(none)	Adds a dependency on the Mono (currently only C#) framework by setting the appropriate dependencies.
motif	(none)	Uses <a href="#">x11-toolkits/open-motif</a> as a library dependency. End users can set <code>WANT_LESSTIF</code> for the dependency to be on <a href="#">x11-toolkits/lesstif</a> instead of <a href="#">x11-toolkits/open-motif</a> .
ncurses	(none), base, port	Uses ncurses, and causes some useful variables to be set.
ninja	(none)	Uses ninja to build the port. End users can set <code>NINJA_VERBOSE</code> for verbose output.
objc	(none)	Add objective C dependencies (compiler, runtime library) if the base system does not support it.
openal	al, soft (default), si, alut	Uses OpenAL. The backend can be specified, with the software implementation as the default. The user can specify a preferred backend with the <code>WANT_OPENAL</code> knob. Valid values for this knob are soft (default) and si.
pathfix	(none)	Look for the Makefile.in and configure files in the

Feature	Arguments	Description
		port's associated sources and fix common paths to make sure they respect the FreeBSD hierarchy. If the port uses automake, set <code>PATHFIX_MAKEFILEIN</code> to <code>Makefile.am</code> if needed.
perl5	(none)	<p>Depends on Perl. These variables can be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>PERL_VERSION</code> : Full version of Perl to use, or the default if not set</li> <li>• <code>PERL_ARCH</code> : Directory name of architecture dependent libraries, defaults to <code>mach</code></li> <li>• <code>PERL_PORT</code> : Name of the Perl port to be installed, the default is derived from <code>PERL_VERSION</code></li> <li>• <code>SITE_PERL</code> : Directory name for site specific Perl packages</li> <li>• <code>USE_PERL5</code> : Phases in which to use Perl, can be <code>extract</code>, <code>patch</code>, <code>build</code>, <code>install</code>, or <code>run</code>. It can also be <code>configure</code>, <code>modbuild</code>, or <code>modbuildtiny</code> when <code>Makefile.PL</code>, <code>Build.PL</code>, or the <code>Module::Build::Tiny</code> flavor of <code>Build.PL</code> is required. If there is a <code>.packlist</code> referencing <code>\${STAGEDIR}</code>, then <code>fix-packlist</code> should be used to patch it. It defaults to <code>build run</code>.</li> </ul>



Feature	Arguments	Description
pgsql	(none), <i>X.Y</i> , <i>X.Y+</i> , <i>X.Y-</i>	<p>Provide support for PostgreSQL. Maintainer can set version required. Minimum and maximum versions can be specified; e.g., 9.0-, 8.4+.</p> <p>Add PostgreSQL component dependency, using <code>WANT_PGSQL=component[:target]</code> .</p> <p>e.g.,  <code>WANT_PGSQL=server:configure</code>  <code>pltcl plperl</code> For the full list use <code>make -V _USE_PGSQL_DEP</code> .</p>
pkgconfig	(none), build (default), run, both	<p>Uses <a href="#">devel/pkgconfig</a>. With no arguments or with the build argument, it implies pkg-config as a build-time dependency. run implies a run-time dependency and both implies both run-time and build-time dependencies.</p>
pure	(none), ffi	<p>Uses <a href="#">lang/pure</a>. Largely used for building related pure ports. With the ffi argument, it implies <a href="#">devel/pure-ffi</a> as a run-time dependency.</p>
qmail	(none), build, run, both, vars	<p>Uses <a href="#">mail/qmail</a>. With the build argument, it implies qmail as a build-time dependency. run implies a run-time dependency. Using no argument or the both argument implies both run-time and build-time dependencies. vars will only set QMAIL variables for the port to use.</p>
qmake	(none), norecursive, out-source	<p>Uses QMake for configuring. For more information</p>

Feature	Arguments	Description
		see <a href="#">Section 6.11.3</a> , “Using <code>qmake</code> ”.
<code>readline</code>	<code>(none)</code> , <code>port</code>	Uses <code>readline</code> as library dependency, and sets <code>CPPFLAGS</code> and <code>LDFLAGS</code> as necessary. If the <code>port</code> argument is used, force the use of <a href="#"><code>devel/readline</code></a>
<code>scons</code>	<code>(none)</code>	Provide support for the use of <a href="#"><code>devel/scons</code></a>
<code>shared-mime-info</code>	<code>(none)</code>	Uses <code>update-mime-database</code> from <a href="#"><code>misc/shared-mime-info</code></a> . This uses will automatically add a post-install step in such a way that the port itself still can specify there own post-install step if needed. It also insert lines into the <code>plist</code> for package install and removal to run <code>update-mime-data</code> with the correct arguments.
<code>shebangfix</code>	<code>(none)</code>	A lot of software uses incorrect locations for script interpreters, most notably <code>/usr/bin/perl</code> and <code>/bin/bash</code> . This fixes shebang lines in scripts listed in <code>SHEBANG_FILES</code> . Currently Bash, Java, Perl, PHP, Python, Ruby, Tcl, and Tk are supported by default. To support another interpreter, set <code>SHEBANG_LANG</code> , <code>lua_OLD_CMD</code> and <code>lua_CMD</code> . For example <code>SHEBANG_LANG=lua</code> , then <code>lua_OLD_CMD=/usr/bin/lua</code> and <code>lua_CMD=\${LOCAL-BASE}/bin/lua</code> .
<code>tar</code>	<code>(none)</code> , <code>Z</code> , <code>bz2</code> , <code>bzip2</code> , <code>lzma</code> , <code>tbz</code> , <code>tgz</code> , <code>txz</code> , <code>xz</code>	Set <code>EXTRACT_SUFX</code> to <code>.tar</code> , <code>.tar.Z</code> , <code>.tar.bz2</code> , <code>.tar.bz2</code> , <code>.tar.lzma</code> , <code>.tbz</code> ,

Feature	Arguments	Description
		.tgz, .txz or .tar.xz respectively.
tcl	PORT	<p>Add a dependency on Tcl. The PORT parameter can be either tcl or tk. Either a version or wrapper dependency can be appended using PORT:version or PORT:wrapper . The version can be empty, one or more exact version numbers (currently 84, 85, or 86), or a minimal version number (currently 84+, 85+ or 86+). A build- or run-time only dependency can be specified using PORT,build or PORT,run . After including <code>bsd.port.pre.mk</code> the port can inspect the results using these variables:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TCL_VER</code>: chosen major.minor version of Tcl</li> <li>• <code>TCLSH</code>: full path of the Tcl interpreter</li> <li>• <code>TCL_LIBDIR</code>: path of the Tcl libraries</li> <li>• <code>TCL_INCLUDEDIR</code>: path of the Tcl C header files</li> <li>• <code>TK_VER</code>: chosen major.minor version of Tk</li> <li>• <code>WISH</code>: full path of the Tk interpreter</li> <li>• <code>TK_LIBDIR</code>: path of the Tk libraries</li> </ul>

Feature	Arguments	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TK_INCLUDEDIR</code> : path of the Tk C header files</li> </ul>
<code>tk</code>	Same as arguments for <code>tcl</code>	Small wrapper when using both Tcl and Tk. The same variables are returned as when using Tcl.
<code>twisted</code>	(none), <code>ARGS</code>	<p>Add a dependency on <code>twistedCore</code>. The list of required components can be specified as a value of this variable. <code>ARGS</code> can be one of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>build</code>: add <code>twistedCore</code> or any specified component as build dependency.</li> <li>• <code>run</code>: add <code>twistedCore</code> or any specified component as run dependency.</li> </ul> <p>Besides <code>build</code> and <code>run</code>, one or more other supported <code>twisted</code> components can be specified. Supported values are listed in <code>Uses/twisted.mk</code>.</p>
<code>uidfix</code>	(none)	Changes some default behavior (mostly variables) of the build system to allow installing this port as a normal user. Try this in your port before adding <code>NEED_ROOT=yes</code>
<code>uniquefiles</code>	(none), <code>dirs</code>	Make files or directories 'unique', by adding a prefix or suffix. If the <code>dirs</code> argument is used, the port needs a prefix (a only a prefix) based on <code>UNIQUE_PREFIX</code> for standard directories <code>DOCSDIR</code> , <code>EXAMPLESDIR</code> , <code>DATADIR</code> , <code>WWWDIR</code> , <code>ETCDIR</code> . The following variables are available for ports:

Feature	Arguments	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>UNIQUE_PREFIX</code> : The prefix to be used for directories and files. Default: <code>\${PKGNAMEPREFIX}</code>.</li> <li>• <code>UNIQUE_PREFIX_FILES</code> : A list of files that need to be prefixed. Default: empty.</li> <li>• <code>UNIQUE_SUFFIX</code> : The suffix to be used for files. Default: <code>\${PKGNAME_SUFFIX}</code>.</li> <li>• <code>UNIQUE_SUFFIX_FILES</code> : A list of files that need to be suffixed. Default: empty.</li> </ul>
webplugin	(none), ARGS	<p>Automatically create and remove symbolic links for each application that supports the webplugin framework. ARGS can be one of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>gecko</code>: support plug-ins based on Gecko</li> <li>• <code>native</code>: support plug-ins for Gecko, Opera, and WebKit-GTK</li> <li>• <code>linux</code>: support Linux plug-ins</li> <li>• <code>all</code> (default, implicit): support all plug-in types</li> <li>• (individual entries): support only the browsers listed</li> </ul> <p>These variables can be adjusted:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>WEBPLUGIN_FILES</code> : No default, must be set manual-</li> </ul>

Feature	Arguments	Description
		<p>ly. The plug-in files to install.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>WEBPLUGIN_DIR</code> : The directory to install the plug-in files to, default <code>PREFIX/lib/browser_plugins/ WEBPLUGIN_NAME</code> . Set this if the port installs plug-in files outside of the default directory to prevent broken symbolic links.</li> <li>• <code>WEBPLUGIN_NAME</code> : The final directory to install the plug-in files into, default <code>PKGBASE</code>.</li> </ul>
zenoss	(none)	Uses <a href="#">net-mgmt/zenoss</a> . Largely used for building zenoss related zenpack ports.
zip	(none), infozip	Indicates that the distribution files use the ZIP compression algorithm. For files using the InfoZip algorithm the infozip argument must be passed to set the appropriate dependencies.
zope	(none)	Uses <a href="#">www/zope</a> . Mostly used for building zope related ports. <code>ZOPE_VERSION</code> can be used by a port to indicate that a specific version of zope shall be used.

# Chapter 16. `__FreeBSD_version` Values

Here is a convenient list of `__FreeBSD_version` values as defined in [sys/param.h](#):

Table 16.1. `__FreeBSD_version` Values

Value	Date	Release
119411		2.0-RELEASE
199501, 199503	March 19, 1995	2.1-CURRENT
199504	April 9, 1995	2.0.5-RELEASE
199508	August 26, 1995	2.2-CURRENT before 2.1
199511	November 10, 1995	2.1.0-RELEASE
199512	November 10, 1995	2.2-CURRENT before 2.1.5
199607	July 10, 1996	2.1.5-RELEASE
199608	July 12, 1996	2.2-CURRENT before 2.1.6
199612	November 15, 1996	2.1.6-RELEASE
199612		2.1.7-RELEASE
220000	February 19, 1997	2.2-RELEASE
(not changed)		2.2.1-RELEASE
(not changed)		2.2-STABLE after 2.2.1-RELEASE
221001	April 15, 1997	2.2-STABLE after texinfo-3.9
221002	April 30, 1997	2.2-STABLE after top
222000	May 16, 1997	2.2.2-RELEASE
222001	May 19, 1997	2.2-STABLE after 2.2.2-RELEASE
225000	October 2, 1997	2.2.5-RELEASE
225001	November 20, 1997	2.2-STABLE after 2.2.5-RELEASE
225002	December 27, 1997	2.2-STABLE after ldconfig -R merge
226000	March 24, 1998	2.2.6-RELEASE
227000	July 21, 1998	2.2.7-RELEASE
227001	July 21, 1998	2.2-STABLE after 2.2.7-RELEASE

Value	Date	Release
227002	September 19, 1998	2.2-STABLE after <a href="#">semctl(2)</a> change
228000	November 29, 1998	2.2.8-RELEASE
228001	November 29, 1998	2.2-STABLE after 2.2.8-RELEASE
300000	February 19, 1996	3.0-CURRENT before <a href="#">mount(2)</a> change
300001	September 24, 1997	3.0-CURRENT after <a href="#">mount(2)</a> change
300002	June 2, 1998	3.0-CURRENT after <a href="#">semctl(2)</a> change
300003	June 7, 1998	3.0-CURRENT after ioctl arg changes
300004	September 3, 1998	3.0-CURRENT after ELF conversion
300005	October 16, 1998	3.0-RELEASE
300006	October 16, 1998	3.0-CURRENT after 3.0-RELEASE
300007	January 22, 1999	3.0-STABLE after 3/4 branch
310000	February 9, 1999	3.1-RELEASE
310001	March 27, 1999	3.1-STABLE after 3.1-RELEASE
310002	April 14, 1999	3.1-STABLE after C++ constructor/destructor order change
320000		3.2-RELEASE
320001	May 8, 1999	3.2-STABLE
320002	August 29, 1999	3.2-STABLE after binary-incompatible IPFW and socket changes
330000	September 2, 1999	3.3-RELEASE
330001	September 16, 1999	3.3-STABLE
330002	November 24, 1999	3.3-STABLE after adding <a href="#">mkstemp(3)</a> to libc
340000	December 5, 1999	3.4-RELEASE
340001	December 17, 1999	3.4-STABLE



## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
350000	June 20, 2000	3.5-RELEASE
350001	July 12, 2000	3.5-STABLE
400000	January 22, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after 3.4 branch
400001	February 20, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after change in dynamic linker handling
400002	March 13, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after C++ constructor/destructor order change
400003	March 27, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after functioning <a href="#">dladdr(3)</a>
400004	April 5, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after <a href="#">__deregister_frame_info</a> dynamic linker bug fix (also 4.0-CURRENT after EGCS 1.1.2 integration)
400005	April 27, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after <a href="#">suser(9)</a> API change (also 4.0-CURRENT after newbus)
400006	May 31, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after cdevsw registration change
400007	June 17, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after the addition of <code>so_cred</code> for socket level credentials
400008	June 20, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after the addition of a poll syscall wrapper to <code>libc_r</code>
400009	July 20, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after the change of the kernel's <code>dev_t</code> type to <code>struct specinfo</code> pointer
400010	September 25, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after fixing a hole in <a href="#">jail(2)</a>
400011	September 29, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after the <code>sigset_t</code> datatype change
400012	November 15, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after the cut-over to the GCC 2.95.2 compiler

Value	Date	Release
400013	December 4, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after adding pluggable linux-mode ioctl handlers
400014	January 18, 2000	4.0-CURRENT after importing OpenSSL
400015	January 27, 2000	4.0-CURRENT after the C++ ABI change in GCC 2.95.2 from -fvtable-thunks to -fno-vtable-thunks by default
400016	February 27, 2000	4.0-CURRENT after importing OpenSSH
400017	March 13, 2000	4.0-RELEASE
400018	March 17, 2000	4.0-STABLE after 4.0-RELEASE
400019	May 5, 2000	4.0-STABLE after the introduction of delayed checksums.
400020	June 4, 2000	4.0-STABLE after merging libxpg4 code into libc.
400021	July 8, 2000	4.0-STABLE after upgrading Binutils to 2.10.0, ELF branding changes, and tcsh in the base system.
410000	July 14, 2000	4.1-RELEASE
410001	July 29, 2000	4.1-STABLE after 4.1-RELEASE
410002	September 16, 2000	4.1-STABLE after <a href="#">setproctitle(3)</a> moved from libutil to libc.
411000	September 25, 2000	4.1.1-RELEASE
411001		4.1.1-STABLE after 4.1.1-RELEASE
420000	October 31, 2000	4.2-RELEASE
420001	January 10, 2001	4.2-STABLE after combining libgcc.a and libgcc_r.a, and associated GCC linkage changes.

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
430000	March 6, 2001	4.3-RELEASE
430001	May 18, 2001	4.3-STABLE after wint_t introduction.
430002	July 22, 2001	4.3-STABLE after PCI power-state API merge.
440000	August 1, 2001	4.4-RELEASE
440001	October 23, 2001	4.4-STABLE after d_thread_t introduction.
440002	November 4, 2001	4.4-STABLE after mount structure changes (affects filesystem klds).
440003	December 18, 2001	4.4-STABLE after the user-land components of smbfs were imported.
450000	December 20, 2001	4.5-RELEASE
450001	February 24, 2002	4.5-STABLE after the usb structure element rename.
450004	April 16, 2002	4.5-STABLE after the sendmail_enable <a href="#">rc.conf(5)</a> variable was made to take the value NONE.
450005	April 27, 2002	4.5-STABLE after moving to XFree86 4 by default for package builds.
450006	May 1, 2002	4.5-STABLE after accept filtering was fixed so that is no longer susceptible to an easy DoS.
460000	June 21, 2002	4.6-RELEASE
460001	June 21, 2002	4.6-STABLE <a href="#">sendfile(2)</a> fixed to comply with documentation, not to count any headers sent against the amount of data to be sent from the file.
460002	July 19, 2002	4.6.2-RELEASE
460100	June 26, 2002	4.6-STABLE

Value	Date	Release
460101	June 26, 2002	4.6-STABLE after MFC of `sed -i'.
460102	September 1, 2002	4.6-STABLE after MFC of many new pkg_install features from the HEAD.
470000	October 8, 2002	4.7-RELEASE
470100	October 9, 2002	4.7-STABLE
470101	November 10, 2002	Start generated <code>__std{in,out,err}p</code> references rather than <code>__sF</code> . This changes <code>std{in,out,err}</code> from a compile time expression to a runtime one.
470102	January 23, 2003	4.7-STABLE after MFC of mbuf changes to replace <code>m_aux</code> mbufs by <code>m_tag</code> 's
470103	February 14, 2003	4.7-STABLE gets OpenSSL 0.9.7
480000	March 30, 2003	4.8-RELEASE
480100	April 5, 2003	4.8-STABLE
480101	May 22, 2003	4.8-STABLE after <a href="#">realpath(3)</a> has been made thread-safe
480102	August 10, 2003	4.8-STABLE 3ware API changes to two.
490000	October 27, 2003	4.9-RELEASE
490100	October 27, 2003	4.9-STABLE
490101	January 8, 2004	4.9-STABLE after <code>e_sid</code> was added to struct <code>kinfo_eproc</code> .
490102	February 4, 2004	4.9-STABLE after MFC of libmap functionality for <code>rtld</code> .
491000	May 25, 2004	4.10-RELEASE
491100	June 1, 2004	4.10-STABLE
491101	August 11, 2004	4.10-STABLE after MFC of revision 20040629 of the package tools
491102	November 16, 2004	4.10-STABLE after VM fix dealing with unwiring of fictitious pages

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
492000	December 17, 2004	4.11-RELEASE
492100	December 17, 2004	4.11-STABLE
492101	April 18, 2006	4.11-STABLE after adding libdata/ldconfig directories to mtree files.
500000	March 13, 2000	5.0-CURRENT
500001	April 18, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after adding addition ELF header fields, and changing our ELF binary branding method.
500002	May 2, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after kld metadata changes.
500003	May 18, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after buf/bio changes.
500004	May 26, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after binutils upgrade.
500005	June 3, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after merging libxpg4 code into libc and after TASKQ interface introduction.
500006	June 10, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after the addition of AGP interfaces.
500007	June 29, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after Perl upgrade to 5.6.0
500008	July 7, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after the update of KAME code to 2000/07 sources.
500009	July 14, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after ether_ifattach() and ether_ifdetach() changes.
500010	July 16, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after changing mtree defaults back to original variant, adding -L to follow symlinks.
500011	July 18, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after kqueue API changed.
500012	September 2, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after <a href="#">setproc-title(3)</a> moved from libutil to libc.

Value	Date	Release
500013	September 10, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after the first SMPng commit.
500014	January 4, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after <sys/select.h> moved to <sys/selinfo.h>.
500015	January 10, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after combining libgcc.a and libgcc_r.a, and associated GCC linkage changes.
500016	January 24, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after change allowing libc and libc_r to be linked together, deprecating -pthread option.
500017	February 18, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after switch from struct ucred to struct xucred to stabilize kernel-exported API for mountd et al.
500018	February 24, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after addition of CPUTYPE make variable for controlling CPU-specific optimizations.
500019	June 9, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after moving machine/ioctl_fd.h to sys/fdcio.h
500020	June 15, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after locale names renaming.
500021	June 22, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after Bzip2 import. Also signifies removal of S/Key.
500022	July 12, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after SSE support.
500023	September 14, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after KSE Milestone 2.
500024	October 1, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after d_thread_t, and moving UUCP to ports.
500025	October 4, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after ABI change for descriptor and

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
		creds passing on 64 bit platforms.
500026	October 9, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after moving to XFree86 4 by default for package builds, and after the new libc strnstr() function was added.
500027	October 10, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after the new libc strcasestr() function was added.
500028	December 14, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after the user-land components of smbfs were imported.
(not changed)		5.0-CURRENT after the new C99 specific-width integer types were added.
500029	January 29, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after a change was made in the return value of <a href="#">sendfile(2)</a> .
500030	February 15, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the introduction of the type fflags_t, which is the appropriate size for file flags.
500031	February 24, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the usb structure element rename.
500032	March 16, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the introduction of Perl 5.6.1.
500033	April 3, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the <a href="#">sendmail_enable rc.conf(5)</a> variable was made to take the value NONE.
500034	April 30, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after <a href="#">mtx_init()</a> grew a third argument.
500035	May 13, 2002	5.0-CURRENT with Gcc 3.1.
500036	May 17, 2002	5.0-CURRENT without Perl in /usr/src
500037	May 29, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the addition of <a href="#">dlfunc(3)</a>

Value	Date	Release
500038	July 24, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the types of some struct sockbuf members were changed and the structure was reordered.
500039	September 1, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after GCC 3.2.1 import. Also after headers stopped using <code>_BSD_FOO_T</code> and started using <code>_FOO_T_DECLARED</code> . This value can also be used as a conservative estimate of the start of <a href="#">bzip2(1)</a> package support.
500040	September 20, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after various changes to disk functions were made in the name of removing dependency on <code>disklabel</code> structure internals.
500041	October 1, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the addition of <a href="#">getopt_long(3)</a> to <code>libc</code> .
500042	October 15, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after Binutils 2.13 upgrade, which included new FreeBSD emulation, <code>vec</code> , and output format.
500043	November 1, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after adding weak <code>pthread_XXX</code> stubs to <code>libc</code> , obsoleting <code>libXThrStub.so</code> . 5.0-RELEASE.
500100	January 17, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after branching for <code>RELENG_5_0</code>
500101	February 19, 2003	<code>&lt;sys/dkstat.h&gt;</code> is empty and should not be included.
500102	February 25, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after the <code>d_mmap_t</code> interface change.
500103	February 26, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after <code>taskqueue_swi</code> changed to run without Giant, and



## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
		taskqueue_swi_giant added to run with Giant.
500104	February 27, 2003	cdevsw_add() and cdevsw_remove() no longer exists. Appearance of MAJOR_AUTO allocation facility.
500105	March 4, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after new cdevsw initialization method.
500106	March 8, 2003	devstat_add_entry() has been replaced by devstat_new_entry()
500107	March 15, 2003	Devstat interface change; see sys/sys/param.h 1.149
500108	March 15, 2003	Token-Ring interface changes.
500109	March 25, 2003	Addition of vm_paddr_t.
500110	March 28, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after <a href="#">real-path(3)</a> has been made thread-safe
500111	April 9, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after <a href="#">usb-hid(3)</a> has been synced with NetBSD
500112	April 17, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after new NSS implementation and addition of POSIX.1 getpw*_r, getgr*_r functions
500113	May 2, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after removal of the old rc system.
501000	June 4, 2003	5.1-RELEASE.
501100	June 2, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after branching for RELENG_5_1.
501101	June 29, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after correcting the semantics of sigtimedwait(2) and sigwaitinfo(2).
501102	July 3, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after adding the lockfunc and lockfun-

Value	Date	Release
		carg fields to <a href="#">bus_dma_tag_create(9)</a> .
501103	July 31, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after GCC 3.3.1-pre 20030711 snapshot integration.
501104	August 5, 2003	5.1-CURRENT 3ware API changes to twe.
501105	August 17, 2003	5.1-CURRENT dynamically-linked /bin and /sbin support and movement of libraries to /lib.
501106	September 8, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after adding kernel support for Coda 6.x.
501107	September 17, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after 16550 UART constants moved from <dev/sio/sioreg.h> to <dev/ic/ns16550.h> . Also when libmap functionality was unconditionally supported by rtld.
501108	September 23, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after PFIL_HOOKS API update
501109	September 27, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after adding kiconv(3)
501110	September 28, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after changing default operations for open and close in cdevsw
501111	October 16, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after changed layout of cdevsw
501112	October 16, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after adding kobj multiple inheritance
501113	October 31, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after the if_xname change in struct ifnet
501114	November 16, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after changing /bin and /sbin to be dynamically linked
502000	December 7, 2003	5.2-RELEASE
502010	February 23, 2004	5.2.1-RELEASE

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
502100	December 7, 2003	5.2-CURRENT after branching for RELENG_5_2
502101	December 19, 2003	5.2-CURRENT after <code>__cxa_atexit/</code> <code>__cxa_finalize</code> functions were added to <code>libc</code> .
502102	January 30, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after change of default thread library from <code>libc_r</code> to <code>libpthread</code> .
502103	February 21, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after device driver API megapatch.
502104	February 25, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after <code>getopt_long_only()</code> addition.
502105	March 5, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after <code>NULL</code> is made into <code>((void *)0)</code> for C, creating more warnings.
502106	March 8, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after <code>pf</code> is linked to the build and install.
502107	March 10, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after <code>time_t</code> is changed to a 64-bit value on <code>sparc64</code> .
502108	March 12, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after Intel C/C++ compiler support in some headers and <code>execve(2)</code> changes to be more strictly conforming to POSIX.
502109	March 22, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the introduction of the <code>bus_alloc_resource_any</code> API
502110	March 27, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the addition of UTF-8 locales
502111	April 11, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the removal of the <code>getvfsent(3)</code> API
502112	April 13, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the addition of the <code>.warning</code> directive for <code>make</code> .
502113	June 4, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after <code>ttyioctl()</code> was made mandatory for serial drivers.

Value	Date	Release
502114	June 13, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after import of the ALTQ framework.
502115	June 14, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after changing sema_timedwait(9) to return 0 on success and a non-zero error code on failure.
502116	June 16, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after changing kernel dev_t to be pointer to struct cdev *.
502117	June 17, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after changing kernel udev_t to dev_t.
502118	June 17, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after adding support for CLOCK_VIRTUAL and CLOCK_PROF to clock_gettime(2) and clock_getres(2).
502119	June 22, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after changing network interface cloning overhaul.
502120	July 2, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the update of the package tools to revision 20040629.
502121	July 9, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after marking Bluetooth code as non-i386 specific.
502122	July 11, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the introduction of the KDB debugger framework, the conversion of DDB into a backend and the introduction of the GDB backend.
502123	July 12, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after change to make VFS_ROOT take a struct thread argument as does vflush. Struct kinfo_proc now has a user data pointer. The switch of the default X implementation to xorg was also made at this time.

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
502124	July 24, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the change to separate the way ports rc.d and legacy scripts are started.
502125	July 28, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the back-out of the previous change.
502126	July 31, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the removal of <code>kmem_alloc_pageable()</code> and the import of gcc 3.4.2.
502127	August 2, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after changing the UMA kernel API to allow ctors/inits to fail.
502128	August 8, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the change of the <code>vfs_mount</code> signature as well as global replacement of <code>PRISON_ROOT</code> with <code>SUSER_ALLOWJAIL</code> for the <code>suser(9)</code> API.
503000	August 23, 2004	5.3-BETA/RC before the <code>pfil</code> API change
503001	September 22, 2004	5.3-RELEASE
503100	October 16, 2004	5.3-STABLE after branching for <code>RELENG_5_3</code>
503101	December 3, 2004	5.3-STABLE after addition of <code>glibc</code> style <code>strftime(3)</code> padding options.
503102	February 13, 2005	5.3-STABLE after OpenBSD's <code>nc(1)</code> import MFC.
503103	February 27, 2005	5.4-PRERELEASE after the MFC of the fixes in <code>&lt;src/include/stdbool.h&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;src/sys/i386/include/_types.h&gt;</code> for using the GCC-compatibility of the Intel C/C++ compiler.
503104	February 28, 2005	5.4-PRERELEASE after the MFC of the change of <code>ifi_epoch</code> from wall clock time to uptime.

Value	Date	Release
503105	March 2, 2005	5.4-PRERELEASE after the MFC of the fix of EOVERFLOW check in vsprintf(3).
504000	April 3, 2005	5.4-RELEASE.
504100	April 3, 2005	5.4-STABLE after branching for RELENG_5_4
504101	May 11, 2005	5.4-STABLE after increasing the default thread stack sizes
504102	June 24, 2005	5.4-STABLE after the addition of sha256
504103	October 3, 2005	5.4-STABLE after the MFC of if_bridge
504104	November 13, 2005	5.4-STABLE after the MFC of bsdiff and portsnap
504105	January 17, 2006	5.4-STABLE after MFC of ldconfig_local_dirs change.
505000	May 12, 2006	5.5-RELEASE.
505100	May 12, 2006	5.5-STABLE after branching for RELENG_5_5
600000	August 18, 2004	6.0-CURRENT
600001	August 27, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after permanently enabling PFIL_HOOKS in the kernel.
600002	August 30, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after initial addition of ifi_epoch to struct if_data. Backed out after a few days. Do not use this value.
600003	September 8, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after the re-addition of the ifi_epoch member of struct if_data.
600004	September 29, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after addition of the struct inpcb argument to the pfil API.
600005	October 5, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after addition of the "-d DESTDIR" argument to newsyslog.

Value	Date	Release
600006	November 4, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after addition of glibc style <code>strftime(3)</code> padding options.
600007	December 12, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after addition of 802.11 framework updates.
600008	January 25, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after changes to <code>VOP_*VOBJECT()</code> functions and introduction of <code>MNTK_MPSAFE</code> flag for Giantfree filesystems.
600009	February 4, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after addition of the <code>cpufreq</code> framework and drivers.
600010	February 6, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after importing OpenBSD's <code>nc(1)</code> .
600011	February 12, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after removing semblance of <code>SVID2 matherr()</code> support.
600012	February 15, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after increase of default thread stacks' size.
600013	February 19, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after fixes in <code>&lt;src/include/stdbool.h&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;src/sys/i386/include/_types.h&gt;</code> for using the GCC-compatibility of the Intel C/C++ compiler.
600014	February 21, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after <code>EOVERFLOW</code> checks in <code>vswprintf(3)</code> fixed.
600015	February 25, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after changing the struct <code>if_data</code> member, <code>ifi_epoch</code> , from wall clock time to uptime.
600016	February 26, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after <code>LC_CTYPE</code> disk format changed.
600017	February 27, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after NLS catalogs disk format changed.

Value	Date	Release
600018	February 27, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after LC_COLLATE disk format changed.
600019	February 28, 2005	Installation of acpica includes into /usr/include.
600020	March 9, 2005	Addition of MSG_NOSIGNAL flag to send(2) API.
600021	March 17, 2005	Addition of fields to cdevsw
600022	March 21, 2005	Removed gtar from base system.
600023	April 13, 2005	LOCAL_CREDS, LOCAL_CONNWAIT socket options added to unix(4).
600024	April 19, 2005	<a href="#">hwpmc(4)</a> and related tools added to 6.0-CURRENT.
600025	April 26, 2005	struct icmphdr added to 6.0-CURRENT.
600026	May 3, 2005	pf updated to 3.7.
600027	May 6, 2005	Kernel libalias and ng_nat introduced.
600028	May 13, 2005	POSIX ttyname_r(3) made available through unistd.h and libc.
600029	May 29, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after libpcap updated to v0.9.1 alpha 096.
600030	June 5, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after importing NetBSD's if_bridge(4).
600031	June 10, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after struct ifnet was broken out of the driver softcs.
600032	July 11, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after the import of libpcap v0.9.1.
600033	July 25, 2005	6.0-STABLE after bump of all shared library versions that had not been changed since RELENG_5.
600034	August 13, 2005	6.0-STABLE after credential argument is added to



## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
		dev_clone event handler. 6.0-RELEASE.
600100	November 1, 2005	6.0-STABLE after 6.0-RELEASE
600101	December 21, 2005	6.0-STABLE after incorporating scripts from the local_startup directories into the base <a href="#">rcorder(8)</a> .
600102	December 30, 2005	6.0-STABLE after updating the ELF types and constants.
600103	January 15, 2006	6.0-STABLE after MFC of pidfile(3) API.
600104	January 17, 2006	6.0-STABLE after MFC of ldconfig_local_dirs change.
600105	February 26, 2006	6.0-STABLE after NLS catalog support of csh(1).
601000	May 6, 2006	6.1-RELEASE
601100	May 6, 2006	6.1-STABLE after 6.1-RELEASE.
601101	June 22, 2006	6.1-STABLE after the import of csup.
601102	July 11, 2006	6.1-STABLE after the iwi(4) update.
601103	July 17, 2006	6.1-STABLE after the resolver update to BIND9, and exposure of reentrant version of netdb functions.
601104	August 8, 2006	6.1-STABLE after DSO (dynamic shared objects) support has been enabled in OpenSSL.
601105	September 2, 2006	6.1-STABLE after 802.11 fix-ups changed the api for the IEEE80211_IOC_STA_INFO ioctl.
602000	November 15, 2006	6.2-RELEASE
602100	September 15, 2006	6.2-STABLE after 6.2-RELEASE.

Value	Date	Release
602101	December 12, 2006	6.2-STABLE after the addition of Wi-Spy quirk.
602102	December 28, 2006	6.2-STABLE after pci_find_extcap() addition.
602103	January 16, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of dl-sym change to look for a requested symbol both in specified dso and its implicit dependencies.
602104	January 28, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of ng_deflate(4) and ng_pred1(4) netgraph nodes and new compression and encryption modes for ng_ppp(4) node.
602105	February 20, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of BSD licensed version of <a href="#">gzip(1)</a> ported from NetBSD.
602106	March 31, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of PCI MSI and MSI-X support.
602107	April 6, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of ncurses 5.6 and wide character support.
602108	April 11, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of CAM 'SG' peripheral device, which implements a subset of Linux SCSI SG passthrough device API.
602109	April 17, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of readline 5.2 patchset 002.
602110	May 2, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of pmap_invalidate_cache(), pmap_change_attr(), pmap_mapbios(), pmap_mapdev_attr(), and pmap_unmapbios() for amd64 and i386.
602111	June 11, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of BOP_BDFLUSH and caused breakage of the filesystem modules KBI.

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
602112	September 21, 2007	6.2-STABLE after libutil(3) MFC's.
602113	October 25, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of wide and single byte ctype separation. Newly compiled binary that references to ctype.h may require a new symbol, __mb_sb_limit, which is not available on older systems.
602114	October 30, 2007	6.2-STABLE after ctype ABI forward compatibility restored.
602115	November 21, 2007	6.2-STABLE after back out of wide and single byte ctype separation.
603000	November 25, 2007	6.3-RELEASE
603100	November 25, 2007	6.3-STABLE after 6.3-RELEASE.
603101	December 7, 2007	6.3-STABLE after fixing multibyte type support in bit macro.
603102	April 24, 2008	6.3-STABLE after adding l_sysid to struct flock.
603103	May 27, 2008	6.3-STABLE after MFC of the memrchr function.
603104	June 15, 2008	6.3-STABLE after MFC of support for :u variable modifier in make(1).
604000	October 4, 2008	6.4-RELEASE
604100	October 4, 2008	6.4-STABLE after 6.4-RELEASE.
700000	July 11, 2005	7.0-CURRENT.
700001	July 23, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after bump of all shared library versions that had not been changed since RELENG_5.

Value	Date	Release
700002	August 13, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after credential argument is added to dev_clone event handler.
700003	August 25, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after memmem(3) is added to libc.
700004	October 30, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after solisten(9) kernel arguments are modified to accept a backlog parameter.
700005	November 11, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after IFP2ENADDR() was changed to return a pointer to IF_LLADDR().
700006	November 11, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after addition of if_addr member to struct ifnet and IFP2ENADDR() removal.
700007	December 2, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after incorporating scripts from the local_startup directories into the base <a href="#">rcorder(8)</a> .
700008	December 5, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after removal of MNT_NODEV mount option.
700009	December 19, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after ELF-64 type changes and symbol versioning.
700010	December 20, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after addition of hostb and vgapci drivers, addition of pci_find_extcap(), and changing the AGP drivers to no longer map the aperture.
700011	December 31, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after tv_sec was made time_t on all platforms but Alpha.
700012	January 8, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after ldconfig_local_dirs change.
700013	January 12, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after changes to /etc/rc.d/abi to support /compat/linux/etc/

Value	Date	Release
		ld.so.cache being a sym-link in a readonly filesystem.
700014	January 26, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after pts import.
700015	March 26, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after the introduction of version 2 of <a href="#">hwpmc(4)</a> 's ABI.
700016	April 22, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after addition of <a href="#">fcloseall(3)</a> to libc.
700017	May 13, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after removal of ip6fw.
700018	July 15, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after import of snd_emu10kx.
700019	July 29, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after import of OpenSSL 0.9.8b.
700020	September 3, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after addition of bus_dma_get_tag function
700021	September 4, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after libpcap 0.9.4 and tcpdump 3.9.4 import.
700022	September 9, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after dlsym change to look for a requested symbol both in specified dso and its implicit dependencies.
700023	September 23, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after adding new sound IOCTLS for the OSSv4 mixer API.
700024	September 28, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after import of OpenSSL 0.9.8d.
700025	November 11, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after the addition of libelf.
700026	November 26, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after major changes on sound sysctls.
700027	November 30, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after the addition of Wi-Spy quirk.
700028	December 15, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after the addition of sctp calls to libc

Value	Date	Release
700029	January 26, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the GNU <a href="#">gzip(1)</a> implementation was replaced with a BSD licensed version ported from NetBSD.
700030	February 7, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the removal of IPIP tunnel encapsulation (VIFF_TUNNEL) from the IPv4 multicast forwarding code.
700031	February 23, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the modification of bus_setup_intr() (newbus).
700032	March 2, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the inclusion of ipw(4) and iwi(4) firmware.
700033	March 9, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the inclusion of ncurses wide character support.
700034	March 19, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after changes to how insmntque(), getnewvnode(), and vfs_hash_insert() work.
700035	March 26, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after addition of a notify mechanism for CPU frequency changes.
700036	April 6, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after import of the ZFS filesystem.
700037	April 8, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after addition of CAM 'SG' peripheral device, which implements a subset of Linux SCSI SG passthrough device API.
700038	April 30, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after changing <a href="#">getenv(3)</a> , <a href="#">putenv(3)</a> , <a href="#">setenv(3)</a> and <a href="#">unsetenv(3)</a> to be POSIX conformant.
700039	May 1, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the changes in 700038 were backed out.

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
700040	May 10, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the addition of <a href="#">flopen(3)</a> to libutil.
700041	May 13, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after enabling symbol versioning, and changing the default thread library to libthr.
700042	May 19, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the import of gcc 4.2.0.
700043	May 21, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after bump of all shared library versions that had not been changed since RELENG_6.
700044	June 7, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after changing the argument for <a href="#">vn_open()</a> / <a href="#">VOP_OPEN()</a> from file descriptor index to the struct file *.
700045	June 10, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after changing <a href="#">pam_nologin(8)</a> to provide an account management function instead of an authentication function to the PAM framework.
700046	June 11, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after updated 802.11 wireless support.
700047	June 11, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after adding TCP LRO interface capabilities.
700048	June 12, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after RFC 3678 API support added to the IPv4 stack. Legacy RFC 1724 behavior of the <a href="#">IP_MULTICAST_IF</a> ioctl has now been removed; 0.0.0.0/8 may no longer be used to specify an interface index. struct <a href="#">ipmreqn</a> should be used instead.
700049	July 3, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after importing pf from OpenBSD 4.1

Value	Date	Release
(not changed)		7.0-CURRENT after adding IPv6 support for FAST_IPSEC, deleting KAME IPSEC, and renaming FAST_IPSEC to IPSEC.
700050	July 4, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after converting setenv/putenv/etc. calls from traditional BSD to POSIX.
700051	July 4, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after adding new mmap/lseek/etc syscalls.
700052	July 6, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after moving I4B headers to include/i4b.
700053	September 30, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the addition of support for PCI domains
700054	October 25, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after MFC of wide and single byte ctype separation.
700055	October 28, 2007	7.0-RELEASE, and 7.0-CURRENT after ABI backwards compatibility to the FreeBSD 4/5/6 versions of the PCIOCGETCONF, PCIOCREAD and PCIOCWRITE IOCTLs was MFCed, which required the ABI of the PCIOCGETCONF IOCTL to be broken again
700100	December 22, 2007	7.0-STABLE after 7.0-RELEASE
700101	February 8, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of m_collapse().
700102	March 30, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of kdb_enter_why().
700103	April 10, 2008	7.0-STABLE after adding l_sysid to struct flock.
700104	April 11, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of procstat(1).



## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
700105	April 11, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of umtx features.
700106	April 15, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of <a href="#">write(2)</a> support to <a href="#">psm(4)</a> .
700107	April 20, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of F_DUP2FD command to <a href="#">fcntl(2)</a> .
700108	May 5, 2008	7.0-STABLE after some <a href="#">lockmgr(9)</a> changes, which makes it necessary to include sys/lock.h in order to use <a href="#">lockmgr(9)</a> .
700109	May 27, 2008	7.0-STABLE after MFC of the memrchr function.
700110	August 5, 2008	7.0-STABLE after MFC of kernel NFS lockd client.
700111	August 20, 2008	7.0-STABLE after addition of physically contiguous jumbo frame support.
700112	August 27, 2008	7.0-STABLE after MFC of kernel DTrace support.
701000	November 25, 2008	7.1-RELEASE
701100	November 25, 2008	7.1-STABLE after 7.1-RELEASE.
701101	January 10, 2009	7.1-STABLE after strndup merge.
701102	January 17, 2009	7.1-STABLE after <a href="#">cpuctl(4)</a> support added.
701103	February 7, 2009	7.1-STABLE after the merge of multi-/no-IPv4/v6 jails.
701104	February 14, 2009	7.1-STABLE after the store of the suspension owner in the struct mount, and introduction of vfs_susp_clean method into the struct vf-sops.
701105	March 12, 2009	7.1-STABLE after the incompatible change to the kern.ipc.shmsegs sysctl to

Value	Date	Release
		allow allocating larger SysV shared memory segments on 64bit architectures.
701106	March 14, 2009	7.1-STABLE after the merge of a fix for POSIX semaphore wait operations.
702000	April 15, 2009	7.2-RELEASE
702100	April 15, 2009	7.2-STABLE after 7.2-RELEASE.
702101	May 15, 2009	7.2-STABLE after ichsmb(4) was changed to use left-adjusted slave addressing to match other SMBus controller drivers.
702102	May 28, 2009	7.2-STABLE after MFC of the fdopendir function.
702103	June 06, 2009	7.2-STABLE after MFC of PmcTools.
702104	July 14, 2009	7.2-STABLE after MFC of the closefrom system call.
702105	July 31, 2009	7.2-STABLE after MFC of the SYSVIPc ABI change.
702106	September 14, 2009	7.2-STABLE after MFC of the x86 PAT enhancements and addition of d_mmap_single() and the scatter/gather list VM object type.
703000	February 9, 2010	7.3-RELEASE
703100	February 9, 2010	7.3-STABLE after 7.3-RELEASE.
704000	December 22, 2010	7.4-RELEASE
704100	December 22, 2010	7.4-STABLE after 7.4-RELEASE.
800000	October 11, 2007	8.0-CURRENT. Separating wide and single byte ctype.
800001	October 16, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after libpcap 0.9.8 and tcpdump 3.9.8 import.

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
800002	October 21, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after renaming <code>kthread_create()</code> and friends to <code>kproc_create()</code> etc.
800003	October 24, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after ABI backwards compatibility to the FreeBSD 4/5/6 versions of the <code>PCIOCGETCONF</code> , <code>PCIOCREAD</code> and <code>PCIOCWRITE</code> IOCTLs was added, which required the ABI of the <code>PCIOCGETCONF</code> IOCTL to be broken again
800004	November 12, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after <code>agp(4)</code> driver moved from <code>src/sys/pci</code> to <code>src/sys/dev/agp</code>
800005	December 4, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after changes to the jumbo frame allocator (rev <a href="#">174247</a> ).
800006	December 7, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of callgraph capture functionality to <a href="#">hwpmc(4)</a> .
800007	December 25, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after <code>kdb_enter()</code> gains a "why" argument.
800008	December 28, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after <code>LK_EXCLUPGRADE</code> option removal.
800009	January 9, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of <a href="#">lockmgr_disown(9)</a>
800010	January 10, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the <a href="#">vn_lock(9)</a> prototype change.
800011	January 13, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the <a href="#">VOP_LOCK(9)</a> and <a href="#">VOP_UNLOCK(9)</a> prototype changes.
800012	January 19, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of <a href="#">lockmgr_recurse(9)</a> , <a href="#">BUF_RECURSED(9)</a> and

Value	Date	Release
		<a href="#">BUF_ISLOCKED(9)</a> and the removal of <a href="#">BUF_REFCNT()</a> .
800013	January 23, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of the “ASCII” encoding.
800014	January 24, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after changing the prototype of <a href="#">lockmgr(9)</a> and removal of <a href="#">lockcount()</a> and <a href="#">LOCKMGR_ASSERT()</a> .
800015	January 26, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after extending the types of the <a href="#">fts(3)</a> structures.
800016	February 1, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after adding an argument to <a href="#">MEX-TADD(9)</a>
800017	February 6, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of <a href="#">LK_NODUP</a> and <a href="#">LK_NOWITNESS</a> options in the <a href="#">lockmgr(9)</a> space.
800018	February 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of <a href="#">m_collapse</a> .
800019	February 9, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of current working directory, root directory, and jail directory support to the <a href="#">kern.proc.filedesc</a> <a href="#">sysctl</a> .
800020	February 13, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of <a href="#">lockmgr_assert(9)</a> and <a href="#">BUF_ASSERT</a> functions.
800021	February 15, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of <a href="#">lockmgr_args(9)</a> and <a href="#">LK_INTERNAL</a> flag removal.
800022	(backed out)	8.0-CURRENT after changing the default system <a href="#">ar</a> to <a href="#">BSD ar(1)</a> .
800023	February 25, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after changing the prototypes of <a href="#">lockstatus(9)</a> and <a href="#">VOP_ISLOCKED(9)</a> , more

Value	Date	Release
		specifically retiring the struct thread argument.
800024	March 1, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after axing out the lockwaiters and BUF_LOCKWAITERS functions, changing the return value of brelvp from void to int and introducing new flags for <a href="#">lockinit(9)</a> .
800025	March 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after adding F_DUP2FD command to <a href="#">fcntl(2)</a> .
800026	March 12, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after changing the priority parameter to cv_broadcastpri such that 0 means no priority.
800027	March 24, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after changing the bpf monitoring ABI when zerocopy bpf buffers were added.
800028	March 26, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after adding l_sysid to struct flock.
800029	March 28, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after reintegration of the BUF_LOCKWAITERS function and the addition of <a href="#">lockmgr_waiters(9)</a> .
800030	April 1, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of the <a href="#">rw_try_rlock(9)</a> and <a href="#">rw_try_wlock(9)</a> functions.
800031	April 6, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of the lockmgr_rw and lockmgr_args_rw functions.
800032	April 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the implementation of the openat and related syscalls, introduction of the O_EXEC flag for the <a href="#">open(2)</a> , and provid-

Value	Date	Release
		ing the corresponding linux compatibility syscalls.
800033	April 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after added <a href="#">write(2)</a> support for <a href="#">psm(4)</a> in native operation level. Now arbitrary commands can be written to /dev/psm %d and status can be read back from it.
800034	April 10, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of the <a href="#">memrchr</a> function.
800035	April 16, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of the <a href="#">fdopendir</a> function.
800036	April 20, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after switchover of 802.11 wireless to multi-bss support (aka vaps).
800037	May 9, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after addition of multi routing table support (aka <a href="#">setfib(1)</a> , <a href="#">setfib(2)</a> ).
800038	May 26, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after removal of <a href="#">netatm</a> and <a href="#">ISDN4BSD</a> . Also, the addition of the Compact C Type (CTF) tools.
800039	June 14, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after removal of <a href="#">sgtty</a> .
800040	June 26, 2008	8.0-CURRENT with kernel NFS <a href="#">lockd</a> client.
800041	July 22, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after addition of <a href="#">arc4random_buf(3)</a> and <a href="#">arc4random_uniform(3)</a> .
800042	August 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after addition of <a href="#">cpuctl(4)</a> .
800043	August 13, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after changing <a href="#">bpf(4)</a> to use a single device node, instead of device cloning.

Value	Date	Release
800044	August 17, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the commit of the first step of the vimage project renaming global variables to be virtualized with a V_ prefix with macros to map them back to their global names.
800045	August 20, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the integration of the MPSAFE TTY layer, including changes to various drivers and utilities that interact with it.
800046	September 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the separation of the GDT per CPU on amd64 architecture.
800047	September 10, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after removal of VSVTX, VSGID and VSUID.
800048	September 16, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after converting the kernel NFS mount code to accept individual mount options in the nmount() iovec, not just one big struct nfs_args.
800049	September 17, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the removal of <a href="#">suser(9)</a> and <a href="#">suser_cred(9)</a> .
800050	October 20, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after buffer cache API change.
800051	October 23, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the removal of the <a href="#">MALLOC(9)</a> and <a href="#">FREE(9)</a> macros.
800052	October 28, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of accmode_t and renaming of VOP_ACCESS 'a_mode' argument to 'a_accmode'.
800053	November 2, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the prototype change of <a href="#">vfs_busy(9)</a> and the introduction of

Value	Date	Release
		its MBF_NOWAIT and MBF_MNTLSTLOCK flags.
800054	November 22, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of buf_ring, memory barriers and ifnet functions to facilitate multiple hardware transmit queues for cards that support them, and a lockless ring-buffer implementation to enable drivers to more efficiently manage queuing of packets.
800055	November 27, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of Intel™ Core, Core2, and Atom support to <a href="#">hw-pmc(4)</a> .
800056	November 29, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of multi-/no-IPv4/v6 jails.
800057	December 1, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the switch to the ath_hal source code.
800058	December 12, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of the VOP_VPTOCNP operation.
800059	December 15, 2008	8.0-CURRENT incorporates the new arp-v2 rewrite.
800060	December 19, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of makefs.
800061	January 15, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after TCP Appropriate Byte Counting.
800062	January 28, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after removal of minor(), minor2unit(), unit2minor(), etc.
800063	February 18, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after GENERIC config change to use the USB2 stack, but also the addition of fdevname(3).



Value	Date	Release
800064	February 23, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the USB2 stack is moved to and replaces dev/usb.
800065	February 26, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the renaming of all functions in libmp(3).
800066	February 27, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after changing USB devfs handling and layout.
800067	February 28, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding getdelim(), getline(), stpncpy(), strlen(), wcsnlen(), wcscasecmp(), and wcsncasecmp().
800068	March 2, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after renaming the ushub devclass to uhub.
800069	March 9, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after libusb20.so.1 was renamed to libusb.so.1.
800070	March 9, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after merging IGMPv3 and Source-Specific Multicast (SSM) to the IPv4 stack.
800071	March 14, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after gcc was patched to use C99 inline semantics in c99 and gnu99 mode.
800072	March 15, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the IFF_NEEDSGIANT flag has been removed; non-MPSAFE network device drivers are no longer supported.
800073	March 18, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the dynamic string token substitution has been implemented for rpath and needed paths.
800074	March 24, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after tcpdump 4.0.0 and libpcap 1.0.0 import.

Value	Date	Release
800075	April 6, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after layout of structs <code>vnet_net</code> , <code>vnet_inet</code> and <code>vnet_ipfw</code> has been changed.
800076	April 9, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding delay profiles in <code>dumynet</code> .
800077	April 14, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after removing <code>VOP_LEASE()</code> and <code>vop_vector.vop_lease</code> .
800078	April 15, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after struct <code>rt_weight</code> fields have been added to struct <code>rt_metrics</code> and struct <code>rt_metrics_lite</code> , changing the layout of struct <code>rt_metrics_lite</code> . A bump to <code>RTM_VERSION</code> was made, but backed out.
800079	April 15, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after struct <code>lentry</code> pointers are added to struct <code>route</code> and struct <code>route_in6</code> .
800080	April 15, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after layout of struct <code>inpcb</code> has been changed.
800081	April 19, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the layout of struct <code>malloc_type</code> has been changed.
800082	April 21, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the layout of struct <code>ifnet</code> has changed, and with <code>if_ref()</code> and <code>if_rele()</code> <code>ifnet</code> refcounting.
800083	April 22, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the implementation of a low-level Bluetooth HCI API.
800084	April 29, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after IPv6 SSM and MLDv2 changes.
800085	April 30, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after enabling support for VIMAGE kernel builds with one active image.

Value	Date	Release
800086	May 8, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding support for input lines of arbitrarily length in patch(1).
800087	May 11, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after some VFS KPI changes. The thread argument has been removed from the FSD parts of the VFS. VFS_* functions do not need the context any more because it always refers to curthread. In some special cases, the old behavior is retained.
800088	May 20, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after net80211 monitor mode changes.
800089	May 23, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding UDP control block support.
800090	May 23, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after virtualizing interface cloning.
800091	May 27, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding hierarchical jails and removing global securelevel.
800092	May 29, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after changing sx_init_flags() KPI. The SX_ADAPTIVESPIN is retired and a new SX_NOADAPTIVE flag is introduced in order to handle the reversed logic.
800093	May 29, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding mnt_xflag to struct mount.
800094	May 30, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding <a href="#">VOP_ACCESSX(9)</a> .
800095	May 30, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after changing the polling KPI. The polling handlers now return the number of packets processed. A new IFCAP_POLLING_NOCOUNT is also introduced to specify that the return value is not

Value	Date	Release
		significant and the counting should be skipped.
800096	June 1, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after updating to the new netisr implementation and after changing the way we store and access FIBs.
800097	June 8, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of vnet destructor hooks and infrastructure.
800097	June 11, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of netgraph outbound to inbound path call detection and queuing, which also changed the layout of struct thread.
800098	June 14, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after OpenSSL 0.9.8k import.
800099	June 22, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after NGROUPS update and moving route virtualization into its own VImage module.
800100	June 24, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after SYSVIPIC ABI change.
800101	June 29, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the removal of the /dev/net/* per-interface character devices.
800102	July 12, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after padding was added to struct sackhint, struct tcpcb, and struct tcpstat.
800103	July 13, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after replacing struct tcptopt with struct toeopt in the TOE driver interface to the TCP syncache.
800104	July 14, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of the linker-set based per-vnet allocator.

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
800105	July 19, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after version bump for all shared libraries that do not have symbol versioning turned on.
800106	July 24, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of OBJT_SG VM object type.
800107	August 2, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after making the newbus subsystem Giant free by adding the newbus sxlock and 8.0-RELEASE.
800108	November 21, 2009	8.0-STABLE after implementing EVFILT_USER kevent filter.
800500	January 7, 2010	8.0-STABLE after __FreeBSD_version bump to make pkg_add -r use packages-8-stable.
800501	January 24, 2010	8.0-STABLE after change of the scandir(3) and alpha-sort(3) prototypes to conform to SUSv4.
800502	January 31, 2010	8.0-STABLE after addition of sigpause(3).
800503	February 25, 2010	8.0-STABLE after addition of SIOCGIFDESCR and SIOCSIFDESCR ioctls to network interfaces. These ioctl can be used to manipulate interface description, as inspired by OpenBSD.
800504	March 1, 2010	8.0-STABLE after MFC of importing x86emu, a software emulator for real mode x86 CPU from OpenBSD.
800505	May 18, 2010	8.0-STABLE after MFC of adding liblzma, xz, xzdec, and lzmainfo.
801000	June 14, 2010	8.1-RELEASE

Value	Date	Release
801500	June 14, 2010	8.1-STABLE after 8.1-RELEASE.
801501	November 3, 2010	8.1-STABLE after KBI change in struct sysentvec, and implementation of PL_FLAG_SCE/SCX/EXEC/SI and pl_siginfo for ptrace(PT_LWPINFO) .
802000	December 22, 2010	8.2-RELEASE
802500	December 22, 2010	8.2-STABLE after 8.2-RELEASE.
802501	February 28, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging DTrace changes, including support for userland tracing.
802502	March 6, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging log2 and log2f into libm.
802503	May 1, 2011	8.2-STABLE after upgrade of the gcc to the last GPLv2 version from the FSF gcc-4_2-branch.
802504	May 28, 2011	8.2-STABLE after introduction of the KPI and supporting infrastructure for modular congestion control.
802505	May 28, 2011	8.2-STABLE after introduction of Hhook and Khelp KPIs.
802506	May 28, 2011	8.2-STABLE after addition of OSD to struct tcpcb.
802507	June 6, 2011	8.2-STABLE after ZFS v28 import.
802508	June 8, 2011	8.2-STABLE after removal of the schedtail event handler and addition of the sv_schedtail method to struct sysvec.
802509	July 14, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging the SSSE3 support into binutils.

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
802510	July 19, 2011	8.2-STABLE after addition of RFTSIGZMB flag for <code>rfork(2)</code> .
802511	September 9, 2011	8.2-STABLE after addition of automatic detection of USB mass storage devices which do not support the no synchronize cache SCSI command.
802512	September 10, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging of re-factoring of auto-quirk.
802513	October 25, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging of the <code>MAP_PREFAULT_READ</code> flag to <code>mmap(2)</code> .
802514	November 16, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging of addition of <code>posix_fallocate(2)</code> syscall.
802515	January 6, 2012	8.2-STABLE after merging of addition of the <code>posix_fadvise(2)</code> system call.
802516	January 16, 2012	8.2-STABLE after merging gperf 3.0.3
802517	February 15, 2012	8.2-STABLE after introduction of the new extensible <code>sysctl(3)</code> interface <code>NET_RT_IFLISTL</code> to query address lists (rev <a href="#">231769</a> ).
803000	March 3, 2012	8.3-RELEASE.
803500	March 3, 2012	8.3-STABLE after branching releng/8.3 (RELENG_8_3).
804000	March 28, 2013	8.4-RELEASE.
804500	March 28, 2013	8.4-STABLE after 8.4-RELEASE.
900000	August 22, 2009	9.0-CURRENT.
900001	September 8, 2009	9.0-CURRENT after importing x86emu, a software emulator for real mode x86 CPU from OpenBSD.

Value	Date	Release
900002	September 23, 2009	9.0-CURRENT after implementing the EVFILT_USER kevent filter functionality.
900003	December 2, 2009	9.0-CURRENT after addition of sigpause(3) and PIE support in csu.
900004	December 6, 2009	9.0-CURRENT after addition of libulog and its libutempter compatibility interface.
900005	December 12, 2009	9.0-CURRENT after addition of sleepq_sleepcnt() , which can be used to query the number of waiters on a specific waiting queue.
900006	January 4, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after change of the scandir(3) and alphasort(3) prototypes to conform to SUSv4.
900007	January 13, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the removal of utmp(5) and the addition of utmpx (see getutxent(3)) for improved logging of user logins and system events.
900008	January 20, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the import of BSD libc/dc and the deprecation of GNU libc/dc.
900009	January 26, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the addition of SIOCGIFDESCR and SIOCSIFDESCR ioctl to network interfaces. These ioctl can be used to manipulate interface description, as inspired by OpenBSD.
900010	March 22, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the import of zlib 1.2.4.
900011	April 24, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after adding soft-updates journalling.



Value	Date	Release
900012	May 10, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after adding liblzma, xz, xzdec, and lz-maininfo.
900013	May 24, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after bringing in USB fixes for linux(4).
900014	June 10, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after adding Clang.
900015	July 22, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the import of BSD grep.
900016	July 28, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after adding mti_zone to struct malloc_type_internal.
900017	August 23, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after changing back default grep to GNU grep and adding WITH_BSD_GREP knob.
900018	August 24, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the pthread_kill(3) -generated signal is identified as SI_LWP in si_code. Previously, si_code was SI_USER.
900019	August 28, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after addition of the MAP_PREFAULT_READ flag to mmap(2) .
900020	September 9, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after adding drain functionality to sbufs, which also changed the layout of struct sbuf.
900021	September 13, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after DTrace has grown support for user-land tracing.
900022	October 2, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after addition of the BSD man utilities and retirement of GNU/GPL man utilities.
900023	October 11, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after updating xz to git 20101010 snapshot.

Value	Date	Release
900024	November 11, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after libgcc.a was replaced by libcompiler_rt.a.
900025	November 12, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the introduction of the modularised congestion control.
900026	November 30, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the introduction of Serial Management Protocol (SMP) passthrough and the XPT_SMP_IO and XPT_GDEV_ADVINFO CAM CCBs.
900027	December 5, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the addition of log2 to libm.
900028	December 21, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the addition of the Hhook (Helper Hook), Khelp (Kernel Helpers) and Object Specific Data (OSD) KPIs.
900029	December 28, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the modification of the TCP stack to allow Khelp modules to interact with it via helper hook points and store per-connection data in the TCP control block.
900030	January 12, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the update of libdialog to version 20100428.
900031	February 7, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the addition of pthread_getthreadid_np(3) .
900032	February 8, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the removal of the uio_yield prototype and symbol.
900033	February 18, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the update of binutils to version 2.17.50.

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
900034	March 8, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the struct sysvec (sv_schedtail) changes.
900035	March 29, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the update of base gcc and libstdc++ to the last GPLv2 licensed revision.
900036	April 18, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the removal of libobjc and Objective-C support from the base system.
900037	May 13, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after importing the libprocstat(3) library and fuser(1) utility to the base system.
900038	May 22, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after adding a lock flag argument to VFS_FHTOVP(9).
900039	June 28, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after importing pf from OpenBSD 4.5.
900040	July 19, 2011	Increase default MAXCPU for FreeBSD to 64 on amd64 and ia64 and to 128 for XLP (mips).
900041	August 13, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the implementation of Capsicum capabilities; fget(9) gains a rights argument.
900042	August 28, 2011	Bump shared libraries' version numbers for libraries whose ABI has changed in preparation for 9.0.
900043	September 2, 2011	Add automatic detection of USB mass storage devices which do not support the no synchronize cache SCSI command.
900044	September 10, 2011	Re-factor auto-quirk. 9.0-RELEASE.

Value	Date	Release
900045	January 2, 2012	9-CURRENT after MFC of true/false from 1000002.
900500	January 2, 2012	9.0-STABLE.
900501	January 6, 2012	9.0-STABLE after merging of addition of the posix_fadvise(2) system call.
900502	January 16, 2012	9.0-STABLE after merging gperf 3.0.3
900503	February 15, 2012	9.0-STABLE after introduction of the new extensible sysctl(3) interface NET_RT_IFLISTL to query address lists (rev <a href="#">231768</a> ).
900504	March 3, 2012	9.0-STABLE after changes related to mounting of filesystem inside a jail (rev <a href="#">232728</a> ).
900505	March 13, 2012	9.0-STABLE after introduction of new tcp(4) socket options: TCP_KEEPIINIT, TCP_KEEPIIDLE, TCP_KEEPIINTVL, and TCP_KEEPCNT (rev <a href="#">232945</a> ).
900506	May 22, 2012	9.0-STABLE after introduction of the quick_exit function and related changes required for C++11 (rev <a href="#">235786</a> ).
901000	August 5, 2012	9.1-RELEASE.
901500	August 6, 2012	9.1-STABLE after branching releng/9.1 (RELENG_9_1).
901501	November 11, 2012	9.1-STABLE after LIST_PREV() added to queue.h (rev <a href="#">242893</a> ) and KBI change in USB serial devices (rev <a href="#">240659</a> ).
901502	November 28, 2012	9.1-STABLE after USB serial jitter buffer requires rebuild of USB serial device modules.

Value	Date	Release
901503	February 21, 2013	9.1-STABLE after USB moved to the driver structure requiring a rebuild of all USB modules. Also indicates the presence of nmtree.
901504	March 15, 2013	9.1-STABLE after install gained -l, -M, -N and related flags and cat gained the -l option.
901505	June 13, 2013	9.1-STABLE after fixes in ctfmerge bootstrapping (rev <a href="#">249243</a> ).
902001	August 3, 2013	releng/9.2 branched from stable/9 (rev <a href="#">253912</a> ).
902501	August 2, 2013	9.2-STABLE after creation of releng/9.2 branch (rev <a href="#">253913</a> ).
902502	August 26, 2013	9.2-STABLE after inclusion of the PIM_RESCAN CAM path inquiry flag (rev <a href="#">254938</a> ).
902503	August 27, 2013	9.2-STABLE after inclusion of the SI_UNMAPPED cdev flag (rev <a href="#">254979</a> ).
902504	October 22, 2013	9.2-STABLE after inclusion of support for “first boot” rc(8) scripts (rev <a href="#">256917</a> ).
902505	December 12, 2013	9.2-STABLE after Heimdal encoding fix (rev <a href="#">259448</a> ).
902506	December 31, 2013	9-STABLE after MAP_STACK fixes (rev <a href="#">260082</a> ).
902507	March 5, 2014	9-STABLE after upgrade of libc++ to 3.4 release (rev <a href="#">262801</a> ).
902508	March 14, 2014	9-STABLE after merge of the Radeon KMS driver (rev <a href="#">263170</a> ).
902509	March 21, 2014	9-STABLE after upgrade of llvm/clang to 3.4 release (rev <a href="#">263509</a> ).

Value	Date	Release
902510	March 27, 2014	9-STABLE after merge of the vt(4) driver (rev <a href="#">263818</a> ).
902511	March 27, 2014	9-STABLE after Free-BSD-SA-14:06.openssl (rev <a href="#">264289</a> ).
902512	April 30, 2014	9-STABLE after Free-BSD-SA-14:08.tcp (rev <a href="#">265123</a> ).
903000	June 20, 2014	9-RC1 releng/9.3 branch (rev <a href="#">267656</a> ).
903500	June 20, 2014	9.3-STABLE releng/9.3 branch (rev <a href="#">267657</a> ).
903501	July 8, 2014	9-STABLE after Free-BSD-SA-14:17.kmem (rev <a href="#">268433</a> ).
1000000	September 26, 2011	10.0-CURRENT.
1000001	November 4, 2011	10-CURRENT after addition of the posix_fadvise(2) system call.
1000002	December 12, 2011	10-CURRENT after defining boolean true/false in sys/types.h, sizeof(bool) may have changed (rev <a href="#">228444</a> ). 10-CURRENT after xlocale.h was introduced (rev <a href="#">227753</a> ).
1000003	December 16, 2011	10-CURRENT after major changes to carp(4), changing size of struct in_aliasreq, struct in6_aliasreq (rev <a href="#">228571</a> ) and straitening arguments check of SIOCAIFADDR (rev <a href="#">228574</a> ).
1000004	January 1, 2012	10-CURRENT after the removal of skpc(9) and the addition of memchr(9) (rev <a href="#">229200</a> ).
1000005	January 16, 2012	10-CURRENT after the removal of support for SIOCSIFADDR, SIOCSIFNETMASK, SIOCSIFBRDADDR,

Value	Date	Release
		SIOCSIFDSTADDR ioctl (rev <a href="#">230207</a> ).
1000006	January 26, 2012	10-CURRENT after introduction of read capacity data asynchronous notification in the cam(4) layer (rev <a href="#">230590</a> ).
1000007	February 5, 2012	10-CURRENT after introduction of new tcp(4) socket options: TCP_KEEPIINIT, TCP_KEEPIIDLE, TCP_KEEPIINTVL, and TCP_KEEPCNT (rev <a href="#">231025</a> ).
1000008	February 11, 2012	10-CURRENT after introduction of the new extensible sysctl(3) interface NET_RT_IFLISTL to query address lists (rev <a href="#">231505</a> ).
1000009	February 25, 2012	10-CURRENT after import of libarchive 3.0.3 (rev <a href="#">232153</a> ).
1000010	March 31, 2012	10-CURRENT after xlocale cleanup (rev <a href="#">233757</a> ).
1000011	April 16, 2012	10-CURRENT import of LLVM/Clang 3.1 trunk r154661 (rev <a href="#">234353</a> ).
1000012	May 2, 2012	10-CURRENT jemalloc import (rev <a href="#">234924</a> ).
1000013	May 22, 2012	10-CURRENT after byacc import (rev <a href="#">235788</a> ).
1000014	June 27, 2012	10-CURRENT after BSD sort becoming the default sort (rev <a href="#">237629</a> ).
1000015	July 12, 2012	10-CURRENT after import of OpenSSL 1.0.1c (rev <a href="#">238405</a> ).
(not changed)	July 13, 2012	10-CURRENT after the fix for LLVM/Clang 3.1 regression (rev <a href="#">238429</a> ).
1000016	August 8, 2012	10-CURRENT after KBI change in <a href="#">ucom(4)</a> (rev <a href="#">239179</a> ).

Value	Date	Release
1000017	August 8, 2012	10-CURRENT after adding streams feature to the USB stack (rev <a href="#">239214</a> ).
1000018	September 8, 2012	10-CURRENT after major rewrite of <a href="#">pf(4)</a> (rev <a href="#">240233</a> ).
1000019	October 6, 2012	10-CURRENT after <a href="#">pfil(9)</a> KBI/KPI changed to supply packets in net byte order to AF_INET filter hooks (rev <a href="#">241245</a> ).
1000020	October 16, 2012	10-CURRENT after the network interface cloning KPI changed and struct if_clone becoming opaque (rev <a href="#">241610</a> ).
1000021	October 22, 2012	10-CURRENT after removal of support for non-MPSAFE filesystems and addition of support for FUSEFS (rev <a href="#">241519</a> , <a href="#">241897</a> ).
1000022	October 22, 2012	10-CURRENT after the entire IPv4 stack switched to network byte order for IP packet header storage (rev <a href="#">241913</a> ).
1000023	November 5, 2012	10-CURRENT after jitter buffer in the common USB serial driver code, to temporarily store characters if the TTY buffer is full. Add flow stop and start signals when this happens (rev <a href="#">242619</a> ).
1000024	November 5, 2012	10-CURRENT after clang was made the default compiler on i386 and amd64 (rev <a href="#">242624</a> ).
1000025	November 17, 2012	10-CURRENT after the <code>sin6_scope_id</code> member variable in struct <code>sockaddr_in6</code> was changed to being filled by the kernel before passing



Value	Date	Release
		the structure to the userland via sysctl or routing socket. This means the KAME-specific embedded scope id in sin6_addr.s6_addr[2] is always cleared in userland application (rev <a href="#">243443</a> ).
1000026	January 11, 2013	10-CURRENT after install gained the -N flag (rev <a href="#">245313</a> ). May also be used to indicate the presence of nmtree.
1000027	January 29, 2013	10-CURRENT after cat gained the -l flag (rev <a href="#">246083</a> ).
1000028	February 13, 2013	10-CURRENT after USB moved to the driver structure requiring a rebuild of all USB modules (rev <a href="#">246759</a> ).
1000029	March 4, 2013	10-CURRENT after the introduction of tickless callout facility which also changed the layout of struct callout (rev <a href="#">247777</a> ).
1000030	March 12, 2013	10-CURRENT after KPI breakage introduced in the VM subsystem to support read/write locking (rev <a href="#">248084</a> ).
1000031	April 26, 2013	10-CURRENT after the dst parameter of the ifnet if_output method was changed to take const qualifier (rev <a href="#">249925</a> ).
1000032	May 1, 2013	10-CURRENT after the introduction of the accept4 (rev <a href="#">250154</a> ) and pipe2 (rev <a href="#">250159</a> ) system calls.
1000033	May 21, 2013	10-CURRENT after flex 2.5.37 import (rev <a href="#">250881</a> ).

Value	Date	Release
1000034	June 3, 2013	10-CURRENT after the addition of the following functions to libm: cacos, cacosf, cacosh, cacoshf, casin, casinf, casinh, casinhf, catan, catanf, catanh, catanhf, logl, log2l, log10l, loglpl, expml (rev <a href="#">251294</a> ).
1000035	June 8, 2013	10-CURRENT after the introduction of the aio_mlock system call (rev <a href="#">251526</a> ).
1000036	July 9, 2013	10-CURRENT after the addition of a new function to the kernel GSSAPI module's function call interface (rev <a href="#">253049</a> ).
1000037	July 9, 2013	10-CURRENT after the migration of statistics structures to PCPU counters. Changed structures include: ahstat, arpstat, espstat, icmp6_ifstat, icmp6stat, in6_ifstat, ip6stat, ipcompstat, ipipstat, ipsecstat, mrt6stat, mrtstat, pfkeystat, pim6stat, pimstat, rip6stat, udpstat (rev <a href="#">253081</a> ).
1000038	July 16, 2013	10-CURRENT after making ARM EABI the default ABI on arm, armeb, armv6, and armv6eb architectures (rev <a href="#">253396</a> ).
1000039	July 22, 2013	10-CURRENT after CAM and <a href="#">mps(4)</a> driver scanning changes (rev <a href="#">253549</a> ).
1000040	July 24, 2013	10-CURRENT after addition of libusb pkgconf files (rev <a href="#">253638</a> ).
1000041	August 5, 2013	10-CURRENT after change from time_second to

Value	Date	Release
		time_uptime in PF_INET6 (rev <a href="#">253970</a> ).
1000042	August 9, 2013	10-CURRENT after VM subsystem change to unify soft and hard busy mechanisms (rev <a href="#">254138</a> ).
1000043	August 13, 2013	10-CURRENT after WITH_ICONV is enabled by default. A new <a href="#">src.conf(5)</a> option, WITH_LIBICONV_COMPAT (disabled by default) adds libiconv_open to provide compatibility with the <a href="#">libiconv</a> port (rev <a href="#">254273</a> ).
1000044	August 15, 2013	10-CURRENT after libc.so conversion to an <a href="#">ld(1)</a> script (rev <a href="#">251668</a> , <a href="#">254358</a> ).
1000045	August 15, 2013	10-CURRENT after devfs programming interface change by replacing the cdevsw flag D_UNMAPPED_IO with the struct cdev flag SI_UNMAPPED (rev <a href="#">254389</a> ).
1000046	August 19, 2013	10-CURRENT after addition of M_PROTO[9-12] and removal of M_FRAG M_FIRSTFRAG M_LASTFRAG mbuf flags (rev <a href="#">254524</a> , <a href="#">254526</a> ).
1000047	August 21, 2013	10-CURRENT after <a href="#">stat(2)</a> update to allow storing some Windows/DOS and CIFS file attributes as <a href="#">stat(2)</a> flags (rev <a href="#">254627</a> ).
1000048	August 22, 2013	10-CURRENT after modification of structure xsctp_inpcb (rev <a href="#">254672</a> ).
1000049	August 24, 2013	10-CURRENT after <a href="#">physio(9)</a> support for devices that do not function properly with

Value	Date	Release
		split I/O, such as <a href="#">sa(4)</a> (rev <a href="#">254760</a> ).
1000050	August 24, 2013	10-CURRENT after modifications of structure mbuf (rev <a href="#">254780</a> , <a href="#">254799</a> , <a href="#">254804</a> , <a href="#">254807</a> <a href="#">254842</a> ).
1000051	August 25, 2013	10-CURRENT after Radeon KMS driver import (rev <a href="#">254885</a> , <a href="#">254887</a> ).
1000052	September 3, 2013	10-CURRENT after import of NetBSD libexecinfo is connected to the build (rev <a href="#">255180</a> ).
1000053	September 6, 2013	10-CURRENT after API and ABI changes to the Capsicum framework (rev <a href="#">255305</a> ).
1000054	September 6, 2013	10-CURRENT after gcc and libstdc++ are no longer built by default (rev <a href="#">255321</a> ).
1000055	September 6, 2013	10-CURRENT after addition of MMAP_32BIT <a href="#">mmap(2)</a> flag (rev <a href="#">255426</a> ).
1000100	December 7, 2013	releng/10.0 branched from stable/10 (rev <a href="#">259065</a> ).
1000500	October 10, 2013	10-STABLE after branch from head/ (rev <a href="#">256283</a> ).
1000501	October 22, 2013	10-STABLE after addition of first-boot <a href="#">rc(8)</a> support (rev <a href="#">256916</a> ).
1000502	November 20, 2013	10-STABLE after removal of iconv symbols from libc.so.7 (rev <a href="#">258398</a> ).
1000510	December 7, 2013	releng/10.0 __FreeBSD_version update to prevent the value from going backwards (rev <a href="#">259067</a> ).
1000700	December 7, 2013	10-STABLE after releng/10.0 branch (rev <a href="#">259069</a> ).

## Chapter 16. \_\_FreeBSD\_version Values

Value	Date	Release
1000701	December 15, 2013	10.0-STABLE after Heimdal encoding fix (rev <a href="#">259447</a> ).
1000702	December 31, 2013	10-STABLE after MAP_STACK fixes (rev <a href="#">260135</a> ).
1000703	March 5, 2014	10-STABLE after upgrade of libc++ to 3.4 release (rev <a href="#">262801</a> ).
1000704	March 7, 2014	10-STABLE after MFC of the vt(4) driver (rev <a href="#">262861</a> ).
1000705	March 21, 2014	10-STABLE after upgrade of llvm/clang to 3.4 release (rev <a href="#">263508</a> ).
1000706	April 6, 2014	10-STABLE after GCC support for __block definition (rev <a href="#">264214</a> ).
1000707	April 8, 2014	10-STABLE after FreeBSD-SA-14:06.openssl (rev <a href="#">264289</a> ).
1000708	April 30, 2014	10-STABLE after FreeBSD-SA-14:07.devfs, FreeBSD-SA-14:08.tcp, and FreeBSD-SA-14:09.openssl (rev <a href="#">265122</a> ).
1000709	May 13, 2014	10-STABLE after support for UDP-Lite protocol (RFC 3828) (rev <a href="#">265946</a> ).
1000710	June 13, 2014	10-STABLE after changes to <a href="#">strcasecmp(3)</a> , moving strcasecmp_l() and strncasecmp_l() from <string.h> to <strings.h> for POSIX 2008 compliance (rev <a href="#">267465</a> ).
1000711	July 8, 2014	10-STABLE after FreeBSD-SA-14:17.kmem (rev <a href="#">268432</a> ).
1100000	October 10, 2013	11.0-CURRENT (rev <a href="#">256284</a> ).

Value	Date	Release
1100001	October 19, 2013	11.0-CURRENT after addition of support for "first boot" rc.d scripts, so ports can make use of this (rev <a href="#">256776</a> ).
1100002	November 5, 2013	11.0-CURRENT after dropping support for historic ioctls (rev <a href="#">257696</a> ).
1100003	November 17, 2013	11.0-CURRENT after iconv changes (rev <a href="#">258284</a> ).
1100004	December 15, 2013	11.0-CURRENT after the behavior change of gss_pseudo_random introduced in r259286. (rev <a href="#">259424</a> )
1100005	December 28, 2013	11.0-CURRENT after r259951 - Do not coalesce entries in vm_map_stack() (rev <a href="#">260010</a> ).
1100006	January 28, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after upgrades of libelf and libdwarf (rev <a href="#">261246</a> ).
1100007	January 30, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after upgrade of libc++ to 3.4 release (rev <a href="#">261283</a> ).
1100008	February 14, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after libc++ 3.4 ABI compatibility fix (rev <a href="#">261801</a> ).
1100009	February 16, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after upgrade of llvm/clang to 3.4 release (rev <a href="#">261991</a> ).
1100010	February 28, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after upgrade of ncurses to 5.9 release (rev <a href="#">262629</a> ).
1100011	March 13, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after ABI change in struct if_data (rev <a href="#">263102</a> ).
1100012	March 14, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after removal of Novell IPX protocol support (rev <a href="#">263140</a> ).

Value	Date	Release
1100013	March 14, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after removal of AppleTalk protocol support (rev <a href="#">263152</a> ).
1100014	March 16, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after renaming <sys/capability.h> to <sys/capsicum.h> to avoid a clash with similarly named headers in other operating systems. A compatibility header is left in place to limit build breakage, but will be deprecated in due course. (rev <a href="#">263235</a> ).
1100015	March 22, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after cnt rename to vm_cnt (rev <a href="#">263620</a> ).
1100016	March 23, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after addition of armv6hf TARGET_ARCH (rev <a href="#">263660</a> ).
1100017	April 4, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after GCC support for __block definition (rev <a href="#">264121</a> ).
1100018	April 6, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after support for UDP-Lite protocol (RFC 3828) (rev <a href="#">264212</a> ).
1100019	April 8, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after FreeBSD-SA-14:06.openssl (rev <a href="#">264265</a> ).
1100020	May 1, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after removing lindev in favor of having /dev/full by default (rev <a href="#">265212</a> ).
1100021	May 6, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after src.opts.mk changes, decoupling <a href="#">make.conf(5)</a> from buildworld (rev <a href="#">265419</a> ).
1100022	May 30, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after changes to <a href="#">strcasemp(3)</a> , moving <a href="#">strcasemp_l()</a> and <a href="#">strncasemp_l()</a> from <string.h> to

Value	Date	Release
		<strings.h> for POSIX 2008 compliance (rev <a href="#">266865</a> ).
1100023	June 13, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after the CUSE library and kernel module have been attached to the build by default (rev <a href="#">267440</a> ).
1100026	July 1, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after the internal interface between the NFS modules, including the krpc, was changed by (rev <a href="#">268115</a> ).
1100027	July 8, 2014	11.0-CURRENT after FreeBSD-SA-14:17.kmem (rev <a href="#">268431</a> ).



## Note

Note that 2.2-STABLE sometimes identifies itself as “2.2.5-STABLE” after the 2.2.5-RELEASE. The pattern used to be year followed by the month, but we decided to change it to a more straightforward major/minor system starting from 2.2. This is because the parallel development on several branches made it infeasible to classify the releases simply by their real release dates. If you are making a port now, you do not have to worry about old -CURRENTs; they are listed here just for your reference.